SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus.
13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel.

CAUTION:
To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet.
The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

PRECAUTION:
Pour déconnecter complètement ce produit du courant secteur, débranchez la prise de la prise murale.
La prise secteur est utilisée pour couper complètement l’alimentation de l’appareil et l’utilisateur doit pouvoir y accéder facilement.

PRECAUCIÓN:
Para desconectar completamente este producto de la alimentación eléctrica, desconecte el enchufe del enchufe de la pared.
El enchufe de la alimentación eléctrica se utiliza para interrumpir por completo el suministro de alimentación eléctrica a la unidad y debe de encontrarse en un lugar al que el usuario tenga fácil acceso.

FCC INFORMATION (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION
Product Name: AV Pre Tuner
Model Number: AV7005

This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Marantz America, Inc.
(a D & M Holdings Company)
100 Corporate Drive
Mahwah, NJ, 07430, U.S.A.
Tel. (830) 741-0300

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by Marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. IMPORTANT
When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only shielded STP or ScTP LAN cables which is available at retailer.
Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

4. NOTE
This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
• Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
• Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
• Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
• Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

For Canadian customers:

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.
NOTES ON USE / OBSERVATIONS RELATIVES A L’UTILISATION / NOTAS SOBRE EL USO

WARNINGS

- Avoid high temperatures.
- Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed in a rack.
- Handle the power cord carefully.
- Hold the plug when unplugging the cord.
- Keep the unit free from moisture, water, and dust.
- Unplug the power cord when not using the unit for long periods of time.
- Do not obstruct the ventilation holes.
- Do not let foreign objects into the unit.
- Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the unit.
- Never disassemble or modify the unit in any way.
- Ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains.
- Naked flame sources such as lighted candles should not be placed on the unit.
- Observe and follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as fluids.
- Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains.
- Do not expose the unit to dripping or splashing fluids.
- Do not put objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on the unit.
- Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands.
- When the switch is in the OFF position, the equipment is not completely switched off from the mains.
- The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible.

AVERTISSEMENTS

- Eviter des températures élevées.
- Tenir compte d’une dispersion de chaleur suffisante lors de l’installation sur une étageré.
- Manipuler le cordon d’alimentation avec précaution.
- Tenir la prise lors du débranchement du cordon.
- Protéger l’appareil contre l’humidité, l’eau et la poussière.
- Débrancher le cordon d’alimentation lorsque l’appareil n’est pas utilisé pendant de longues périodes.
- Ne pas obstruer les trous d’aération.
- Ne pas laisser des objets étrangers dans l’appareil.
- Ne pas mettre en contact des insecticides, du benzène et un diluant avec l’appareil.
- Ne jamais démonter ou modifier l’appareil d’une manière ou d’une autre.
- Ne pas recouvrir les orifices de ventilation avec des objets tels que des journaux, nappes ou nœuds. Cela entraverait la ventilation.
- Ne jamais placer de flamme nue sur l’appareil, notamment des bougies allumées.
- Veillez à respecter les lois en vigueur lorsque vous jetez les piles usagées.
- L’appareil ne doit pas être exposé à l’eau ou à l’humidité.
- Ne pas poser d’objet contenant du liquide, par exemple un vase, sur l’appareil.
- Ne pas manipuler le cordon d’alimentation avec les mains mouillées.
- Lorsque l’interrupteur est sur la position OFF, l’appareil n’est pas complètement déconnecté du SECTEUR (MAINS).
- L’appareil sera installé près de la source d’alimentation, de sorte que cette dernière soit facilement accessible.

ADVERTENCIAS

- Evite altas temperaturas.
- Permite la suficiente dispersión del calor cuando estás instalado en la consola.
- Maneje el cordon de energía con cuidado.
- Sostenga el enchufe cuando desconecte el cordon de energía.
- Mantenga el equipo libre de humedad, agua y polvo.
- Desconecte el cordon de energía cuando no utilice el equipo por mucho tiempo.
- No obstruya los orificios de ventilación.
- No deje objetos extraños dentro del equipo.
- No permita el contacto de insecticidas, gasolina y diluyentes con el equipo.
- Nunca desarme o modifique el equipo de ninguna manera.
- La ventilación no debe quedar obstruida por haberse cubierto las aperturas con objetos como periódicos, manteles o cortinas.
- No deberán coloquese sobre el aparato fuentes inflamables sin protección, como velas encendidas.
- A la hora de deshacerse de las pilas, respete la normativa para el cuidado del medio ambiente.
- No exponer el aparato a gotas o salpicaduras cuando se utilice.
- No colocar sobre el aparato objetos llenos de líquido, como jarros.
- No maneje el cable de alimentación con las manos mojadas.
- Cuando el interruptor está en la posición OFF, el equipo no está completamente desconectado de la alimentación MAINS.
- El equipo se instalará cerca de la fuente de alimentación de manera que resulte fácil acceder a ella.

CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION

PRECAUTIONS D’INSTALLATION

EMPLAZAMIENTO DE LA INSTALACIÓN

- For proper heat dispersal, do not install this unit in a confined space, such as a bookcase or similar enclosure.
- More than 0.3 m (12 in.) is recommended.
- Do not place any other equipment on this unit.
- Pour permettre la dissipation de chaleur requise, n’installez pas cette unité dans un espace confiné tel qu’une bibliothèque ou un endroit similaire.
- Une distance de plus de 0,3 m (12 po) est recommandée.
- Ne placez aucun matériel sur cet appareil.
- Para la dispersión del calor adecuadamente, no instale este equipo en un lugar confinado tal como una librería o unidad similar.
- Se recomienda dejar más de 0,3 m (12 pulg.) alrededor.
- No coloque ningún otro equipo sobre la unidad.
## Getting started

Thank you for purchasing this Marantz product. To ensure proper operation, please read this user guide carefully before using the product. After reading them, be sure to keep them for future reference.

### Contents

- **Getting started** .................................................. 1
- **Accessories** ......................................................... 2
- **About this manual** .................................................. 2
- **Features** ............................................................... 2
- **Cautions on handling** ............................................. 3

### Simple version (Simple setup guide) .......................... 4

### Basic version ......................................................... 13

- **Connections** .......................................................... 14
  - Important information .............................................. 14
  - Connecting an HDMI-compatible device .................... 15
  - Connecting a TV ..................................................... 17
  - Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player ............................ 17
  - Connecting a DVD player ......................................... 18
  - Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV) .... 18
  - Connecting a video cassette recorder ....................... 19
  - Connecting a digital camcorder ................................ 19
  - Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port 20
  - Connecting a CD player ........................................... 20
  - Connecting a CD recorder ........................................ 21
  - Connecting a record player ..................................... 21
  - Connecting an antenna .......................................... 22
  - Connecting a wireless receiver (RX101) .................... 23
  - Connect a device that has a multichannel output terminal 23
  - Connecting to a home network (LAN) ....................... 24

- **Playback (Basic operation)** ..................................... 25
  - Important information ............................................ 25
  - Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player .................. 26
  - Playing a CD player ............................................... 26
  - Playing an iPod® .................................................... 27
  - Playing a USB memory device ................................... 28
  - Tuning in radio stations ......................................... 30
  - Playing a network audio ......................................... 34

- **Selecting a listening mode (Surround mode)** ............. 44
  - Multi-channel playback ......................................... 44
  - Stereo playback .................................................... 46
  - Direct playback ..................................................... 46
  - Dolby Virtual Speaker/Dolby Headphone playback ........ 46

- **Advanced version** .................................................. 47
  - Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection) 48
  - Install ................................................................. 48
  - Connect ............................................................... 49
  - Set up speakers .................................................... 52
  - Connections (Advanced connection) ............................ 53
    - REMOTE CONTROL jacks ...................................... 53
    - RS-232C connector ............................................. 54
    - DC OUT (TRIGGER OUT) jacks ............................... 54
  - Playback (Advanced operation) ................................. 55
    - Convenient functions .......................................... 55
    - Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room) .............. 61
      - Audio output .................................................. 61
      - Video output .................................................. 62
      - Playback ....................................................... 62
    - How to make detailed settings ............................... 63
      - Menu map ........................................................ 63
      - Examples of menu and front display ..................... 64
      - Inputting characters ......................................... 65
      - Input Setup .................................................... 66
      - Audio/Video Adjust ........................................... 72
      - Manual Setup .................................................. 77
    - Information ...................................................... 88
  - **Other settings** .................................................. 89
    - Remote control settings ..................................... 89
    - Switches light illumination on/off .......................... 89
    - Operating the connected devices by remote control unit 90
      - Operating AV equipment ............................ 90
      - Registering preset codes ................................. 91
      - Operating components ..................................... 92
      - Operating learn function ................................... 93
      - Operating macro function ................................ 95
      - Setting the backlight ....................................... 96

- **Information** .......................................................... 97
  - Part names and functions ....................................... 98
  - Front panel ......................................................... 98
  - Display .............................................................. 99
  - Rear panel .......................................................... 100
  - Remote control unit ............................................ 101
  - Other information ................................................ 103
    - Trademark information ....................................... 103
    - Surround .......................................................... 104
    - Relationship between video signals and monitor output 108
    - Explanation of terms ......................................... 109
  - **Troubleshooting** ............................................... 112
    - Resetting the microprocessor ................................ 115
    - Specfications ..................................................... 116

### List of preset codes .............................................. End of this manual
Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

1. User guide ................................................................. 1
2. Warranty card (for USA) .............................................. 1
3. Warranty card (for CANADA) ....................................... 1
4. Power cord .............................................................. 1
5. Remote control unit (RC011SR) .................................... 1
6. R03/AAA batteries .................................................... 1
7. Setup microphone (ACM1H) ........................................ 1
8. AM loop antenna (for HD Radio broadcasts) ............... 1
9. FM indoor antenna (for HD Radio broadcasts) ............ 1

About this manual

Operation buttons
The operations described in this guide are based mainly on remote control operation.

Symbols
This symbol indicates a reference page on which related information is described.

This symbol indicates a supplementary information and tips for operations.

NOTE
This symbol indicates a supplementary information and tips for operations.

Illustrations
Note that the illustrations in these instructions are for explanation purposes and may differ from the actual unit.

Features

Current feedback amplifier
This unit uses a high-speed current feedback amplifier circuit for its preamplifier so that signals from a Blu-ray Disc player and other equipment that support high-definition audio formats can be amplified with high fidelity. The high-speed current feedback amplifier also reproduces a natural sound space.

Supports HDMI 1.4a with 3D, ARC, Deep Color, x.v.Color, Auto LipSync and HDMI control function
This unit can output 3D video signals input from a Blu-ray Disc player to a TV that supports a 3D system. This unit also supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function, which reproduces TV sound with this unit via an HDMI cable used for connecting the unit and a TV.

1. The TV should support the ARC function.

Internet radio, music and photo streaming via network
This unit can playback audio files and still images such as photographs that are stored on your computer via a network. You can also listen to internet radio and a whole host of other online music that uses network technology.

2. An internet connection is required.

3. You may be required to sign a service agreement with the companies that provide particular services.

6-HDMI inputs and 2-outputs
The unit is equipped with 6 HDMI input connectors for connecting devices with HDMI connectors, such as a Blu-ray Disc player, game machine, HD video camera, etc. One of the 6 input connectors of this unit is provided on the front panel so that you can easily connect and display images and videos recorded in a digital still camera or digital video camera.

High definition audio support
The unit is equipped with a decoder which supports high-quality digital audio format for Blu-ray Disc players such as Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD Master Audio, etc.

Audyssey DSX™
This unit is equipped with Audyssey DSX decoder. By connecting front height speakers to the power amp and using Audyssey DSX playback, you can experience a more powerful playback expression in the wide audio range.

Easy to use, Graphical User Interface
This unit is equipped with an easy to see “Graphical User Interface” that uses menu displays and levels. The use of level displays increases operability of the unit.

All sources are up-scaled to 1080p
The unit is provided with an HDMI video up-scaling function that converts an analog video signal input to the unit to a 1080p (HD resolution) signal and supplies it to a TV via the HDMI connector. This enables the unit and a TV connected with a single HDMI cable and any video source to be reproduced precisely with HD level of quality.

Direct play for iPod® and iPhone® via USB
Music data from an iPod can be played back if you connect the USB cable supplied with the iPod via the USB port of this unit, and also an iPod can be controlled with the remote control unit for this unit.

M-XPort (Marantz-eXtension Port)
This unit is equipped with the M-XPort, a Marantz original innovation that provides outstanding expandability. You can connect the Wireless Receiver RX101 (sold separately) to this port.

UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal for front height channel
This unit is equipped with a dedicated UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal on the rear panel. You can enjoy 7.1-channel playback using the front height channel and 7.1-channel playback using the surround back channel, without having to reconnect the speakers.
Cautions on handling

• Before turning the power switch on
  Check once again that all connections are correct and that there are no problems with the connection cables.

• Power is supplied to some of the circuitry even when the unit is set to the standby mode. When going on vacation or leaving home for long periods of time, be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

• About condensation
  If there is a major difference in temperature between the inside of the unit and the surroundings, condensation (dew) may form on the operating parts inside the unit, causing the unit not to operate properly.
  If this happens, let the unit sit for an hour or two with the power turned off and wait until there is little difference in temperature before using the unit.

• Cautions on using mobile phones
  Using a mobile phone near this unit may result in noise. If that occurs, move the mobile phone away from this unit when it is in use.

• Moving the unit
  Turn off the power and unplug the power cord from the power outlet. Next, disconnect the connection cables to other system units before moving the unit.

• About Care
  • Wipe the cabinet and control panel clean with a soft cloth.
  • Follow the instructions when using a chemical cleaner.
  • Benzene, paint thinner or other organic solvents as well as insecticide may cause material changes and discoloration if brought into contact with the unit, and should therefore not be used.
Here, we explain the entire setup procedure, from unboxing the unit to using it in a home theater. The “Simple version” section provides the speaker installation, connection, and setup methods for the 7.1-channel system with surround back speakers. For the installing, connecting, and setup methods of speakers other than the 7.1-channel system (with surround back speakers), see page 48.

Before connecting the unit, turn off the power to all devices.

For operation of the connected devices, refer to the user manuals for each device.
1 Install

This unit can perform 2.0/2.1 to 7.1-channel surround playback. This page provides the speaker installation procedure for the 7.1-channel playback using surround back speakers as an example.

The default setting is 7.1-channel. You can also perform 5.1-channel playback. To perform 5.1-channel playback, connect 5.1-channel speakers only. Use Audyssey Auto Setup function of this unit to automatically detect the number of connected speakers and perform optimal settings for the speakers to be used.

2 Connect

- Connect a power amp (sold separately) to the PRE OUT terminal of this unit.
- This unit has an UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal and BALANCED PRE OUT terminal. Connect to the correct terminal for your power amp.
- Connect the speakers to the power amp.
- For details on speaker connections, see the User Guide for the power amp.

![Diagram of speaker setup](image)

**FL** Front speaker (L)  
**FR** Front speaker (R)  
**C** Center speaker  
**SW** Subwoofer  
**SL** Surround speaker (L)  
**SR** Surround speaker (R)  
**SBL** Surround back speaker (L)  
**SBR** Surround back speaker (R)

- Install the surround speakers in a position 2 to 3 ft (60 to 90 cm) higher than ear level.
- Point slightly downwards.

The "Simple version" section provides the speaker installation, connection, and setup methods for the 7.1-channel system with surround back speakers. For the installing, connecting, and setup methods of speakers other than the 7.1-channel system (with surround back speakers), see page 48.
Example of connections to Marantz MM7055 and MM7025 power amp

Connecting the unbalanced PRE OUT terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SBL</th>
<th>SBR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SL</td>
<td>SW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBL</td>
<td>SBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker cables (sold separately)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (sold separately)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connecting the balanced PRE OUT terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SBL</th>
<th>SBR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SL</td>
<td>SW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBL</td>
<td>SBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker cables (sold separately)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (sold separately)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subwoofer with built-in amplifier

Audio cable (sold separately)

AV7005 XLR connector PIN arrangement

1. GND (Ground)
2. HOT (Hot)
3. COLD (Cold)

The PIN arrangement in this device uses the European method. In the USA method, 2 is COLD, and 3 is HOT.

When connecting a device that utilizes the USA type of PIN arrangement, replace the 2 and 3 plugs on one side of the balanced cable.

**NOTE**

Do not short the HOT and GND or COLD and GND for use.

The "Simple version" section provides the speaker installation, connection, and setup methods for the 7.1-channel system with surround back speakers. For the installing, connecting, and setup methods of speakers other than the 7.1-channel system (with surround back speakers), see page 48.
Use only an HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface) cable that bears the HDMI logo (a genuine HDMI product). Using a cable without the HDMI logo (a non-genuine HDMI product) may result in abnormal playback.

When outputting Deep Color or 1080p, etc., we recommend you use a “High Speed HDMI cable” or a “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet” for enhanced high-quality playback.

**NOTE**
- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed.
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in humming or noise.

**Connect**

**Blu-ray Disc player and TV**

1. **Turn on the TV and subwoofer power.**

2. **Change the TV input to the input of this unit.**

3. **Press ON to turn on power to the unit.** The power indicator switches off, and power is supplied to the unit.

4. **Turn on the power amp power.**

**NOTE**
Before you use the remote control unit for the first time, be sure to insert the batteries (page 102 “Inserting the batteries”).
The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called “Audyssey Auto Setup”. To perform measurement, place the setup microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

- When performing Audyssey Auto Setup, MultEQ® XT/Dynamic EQ®/Dynamic Volume® functions become active (page 74, 75).
- To set up the speakers manually, use “Speaker Setup” (page 78) on the menu.

**NOTE**
- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows, silence cell phones, televisions, radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, home appliances, light dimmers, or other devices as measurements may be affected by these sounds.
- Cell phones should be placed away from all audio electronics during the measurement process as Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) may cause measurement disruptions (even if the cell phone is not in use).
- Do not unplug the setup microphone from the main unit until Audyssey Auto Setup is completed.
- Do not stand between the speakers and setup microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. This will cause inaccurate readings.
- Loud test sounds may be played during Audyssey Auto setup. This is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME +, – during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected.

**About the main listening position (‘M’)**
The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey Auto Setup, place the setup microphone in the main listening position. Audyssey MultEQ® XT uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.
2 Set up the subwoofer

If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.

- **When using a subwoofer with a direct mode**
  Set the direct mode to “On” and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

- **When using a subwoofer without a direct mode**
  Make the following settings:
  - **Volume**: “12 o’clock position”
  - **Crossover frequency**: “Maximum/Highest Frequency”
  - **Low pass filter**: “Off”
  - **Standby mode**: “Off”

**NOTE**

When you use two subwoofers, please adjust the subwoofer volume controls individually so that each subwoofer level is as close as possible to 75 dB using the test tone (page 79) before Audyssey Auto Setup.

3 Set up the remote control unit

- **Set up the operation mode**
  Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.

   - **Press AMP**

4 Connect the setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.

   - **Connect the setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.**

   When the setup microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.

5 Use 
   to select “Auto Setup Start” and then press ENTER.

6 Select “Measure” and then press ENTER.

   - **Select “Measure” and then press ENTER.**
   - When measuring begins, a test tone is output from each speaker.
   - Measurement requires several minutes.

7 The detected speakers are displayed.

   - **The detected speakers are displayed.**

8 Use 
   to select “Next Measurement” and then press ENTER.

**NOTE**

- **If “Caution” is displayed:**
  Go to “Error messages” (page 11), check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
  If the problem is resolved, return and restart “Audyssey Auto Setup”.

- **When performing Audyssey Auto Setup over again**
  Press RETURN to select “Retry”, and then press ENTER.

- **When measuring has stopped**
  Press RETURN to the “Cancel Auto Setup?” prompt is displayed.
  Press to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

- **Setting up the speakers again**
  Repeat the operation from step 4 of STEP 1 Preparation.
Set up speakers (Audyssey® Auto Setup)

**STEP 3 Measurement**
- In STEP 3, you will perform measurements at multiple positions (two to eight positions) other than the main listening position.
- You can achieve a more effective correction of distortion within the listening area by performing measurements at multiple positions.

9 Move the setup microphone to position 2, use \( \Delta \uparrow \) to select “Measure”, and then press ENTER.
The measurement of the second position starts. Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.

9 If you want to omit measurements from the next position onward, select “Next Calculation”. (Go to **STEP 4 Calculation**)

10 Repeat step 9, measuring positions 3 to 8.
When measurement of position 8 is completed, a “Measurements finished.” message is displayed.

**STEP 4 Calculation**
- Measuring results are analyzed, and the frequency response of each speaker in the listening room is determined.
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete. The time required for this analysis depends on the number of speakers connected.
- The more connected speakers there are, the longer it takes to perform analysis.

11 On the **STEP 3** screen, use \( \Delta \uparrow \) to select “Next Calculation”, and then press ENTER.

**STEP 5 Check**
- Use \( \Delta \uparrow \) to select the item you want to check, and then press ENTER.
- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.
- If you want to check another item, press RETURN.
- If the result still differs from the actual connection status after remeasurement or the error message still appears, it is possible that the speakers are not connected properly. Turn this unit off, check the speaker connections and repeat the measurement process from the beginning.
- If you change speaker positions or orientation, perform Audyssey Auto Setup again to find the optimal equalizer settings.

12 Use \( \Delta \uparrow \) to select “Next Store” and then press ENTER.
- Press “Store” to store calculation results.
- If you want to omit measurements from the next position onward, select “Next Calculation”.

13 Use \( \Delta \uparrow \) to select “Next Store” and then press ENTER.
- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.
- If you want to check another item, press RETURN.

**STEP 6 Store**
- The measurement of the second position starts. Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete. The time required for this analysis depends on the number of speakers connected.
- The more connected speakers there are, the longer it takes to perform analysis.

14 Select “Store” and then press ENTER.

- Save the measurement results.
- Saving the results requires about 10 seconds.
- If the measuring results are not to be saved, press RETURN. A message “Cancel Auto Setup?” will be displayed. Press \( \downarrow \) then select “Yes”. All the measured Audyssey Auto Setup data will be erased.

**NOTE**
- During saving of measurement results, be sure not to turn off the power.
Set up speakers (Audyssey® Auto Setup)

**Finish**

15 Unplug the setup microphone from the unit’s SETUP MIC jack.

16 Set Dynamic Volume®.

### Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Auto Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If this happens, check the relevant items, be sure to take the necessary measures, then perform Audyssey Auto Setup over again.

**NOTE**

Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Error details</th>
<th>Measures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>The connected setup microphone is broken, or a device other than the supplied setup microphone is connected.</td>
<td>Connect the included setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>Not all speakers could be detected.</td>
<td>Check the speaker connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>The front L speaker was not properly detected.</td>
<td>Check the speaker connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>There is too much noise in the room for accurate measurements to be made.</td>
<td>Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. Adjust the subwoofer’s volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low for accurate measurements to be made.</td>
<td>Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. Adjust the subwoofer’s volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>The displayed speaker could not be detected.</td>
<td>Check the connections of the displayed speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Setup](Auto Setup.png)</td>
<td>The displayed is connected with the polarities reversed.</td>
<td>Check the polarities of the displayed speaker. For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press Δ (Up) to select “Skip”, then press ENTER.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

After performing Audyssey Auto Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey Auto Setup again.

**Remote control operation buttons**

- **Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)**
- **Confirm the setting**
- **Return**
Parameter Check

This function enables you to check the measurement results and equalizer characteristics after Audyssey Auto Setup.

1. Use ▲▼ to select “Parameter Check” and then press ENTER or ▶.
2. Use ▲▼ to select the item you want to check, then press ENTER or ▶.

Measurement results for each speaker are displayed.

- **Speaker Config. Check**
  - Check the speaker configuration.

- **Distance Check**
  - Check the distance.

- **Channel Level Check**
  - Check the channel level.

- **Crossover Check**
  - Check the crossover frequency.

- **EQ Check**
  - Check the equalizer.

*If “EQ Check” is selected in step 2, press ▲▼ to select equalizing curve (“Audyssey” or “Audyssey Flat”) to be checked. Use ◀▶ to switch the display between the different speakers.*

3. Press RETURN.

The confirmation screen reappears. Repeat steps 2.

**Retrieving Audyssey Auto Setup settings**

If you set “Restore” to “Yes”, you can return to Audyssey Auto Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultiEQ® XT) even when you have changed each setting manually.

---

Play back disc

1. Press BD two times in a row to switch an input source for a player used for playback.
2. Play the component connected to this unit.

Make the necessary settings on the player (language setting, subtitles setting, etc.) beforehand.

3. Adjust the sound volume.

- **VOLUME +** Volume up
- **VOLUME –** Volume down
- **MUTE** Muting

4. Set the listening mode.

Set the listening mode according to the playback contents (cinema, music, etc.) or according to your liking (page 44 “Selecting a listening mode (Surround mode)”).

---

**When power is switched to standby**

Press STANDBY.

*Power indicator status in standby mode*

- Normal standby : Red
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “ON” : Orange
- When “Network Standby” is set to “ON” : Orange

You can also switch the power to standby by pressing ON/STANDBY on the main unit.

**NOTE**

During power standby, a minimal amount of power is consumed. To totally cut off the power, remove the power cord from the power outlet.
## Basic version

Here, we explain the connections and basic operation methods for this unit.

- **Connections**  page 14
- **Playback (Basic operation)**  page 25
- **Selecting a listening mode (Surround mode)**  page 44

Refer to the pages indicated below for information on connecting and playing back the various media and external devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio and Video</th>
<th>Connection</th>
<th>Playback</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>page 16, 17</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blu-ray Disc player</td>
<td>page 16, 17</td>
<td>page 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD player</td>
<td>page 16, 18</td>
<td>page 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video cassette recorder</td>
<td>page 16, 19</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set-top box (Satellite tuner or cable TV)</td>
<td>page 16, 18</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game console</td>
<td>page 16</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital camcorder</td>
<td>page 19</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio</th>
<th>Connection</th>
<th>Playback</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iPod®</td>
<td>page 20</td>
<td>page 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB memory device</td>
<td>page 20</td>
<td>page 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD player</td>
<td>page 20</td>
<td>page 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD recorder</td>
<td>page 21</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record player</td>
<td>page 21</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIRIUS satellite radio</td>
<td>page 22</td>
<td>page 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD Radio receiver</td>
<td>page 22</td>
<td>page 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless receiver (RX101)</td>
<td>page 23</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Network</th>
<th>Connection</th>
<th>Playback</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Network</td>
<td>page 24</td>
<td>page 34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For speaker connections, see page 5.
### Connections

#### Important information
- Make connections as follows before using this unit. Select an appropriate connection type according to the components to be connected.
- You may need to make some settings on this unit depending on the connection method. Refer to each description for more information.
- Select the cables (sold separately) according to the components being connected.

**NOTE**
- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed.
- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components being connected.
- Be sure to connect the left and right channels properly (left with left, right with right).
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

#### Converting input video signals for output
(Video conversion function)

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, Component video and video) and three types of video output connectors (HDMI, Component video and video). Use the connectors corresponding to the components to be connected.

This function automatically converts various formats of video signals input to this unit into the formats used to output the video signals from this unit to a monitor.

### Diagram

- **[Flow of video signals for MAIN ZONE]**
- **[Flow of video signals for ZONE2]**

### Notes
- The video conversion function supports the NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC 4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60 formats.
- The resolution of the video signal input to this unit’s HDMI connector is the one set at “Resolution” (page 70). (1080p HDMI signals and 1080p component signals are output at 1080p, regardless of the setting.)
- Resolutions of HDMI-compatible TVs can be checked at “HDMI Monitor 1 Information” or “HDMI Monitor 2 Information” (page 88).

**NOTE**
- HDMI signals cannot be converted into analog signals.
- When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate.
- Component video input signals cannot be converted into Video format.
- When using component output terminal 2 for ZONE2 video signal output, set “Input Setup” – “Input Assign” – “Component” (page 69) in the menu to “ZONE2”.

---

*AV7005U_ENG.indd 14* 2010/08/23 18:32:10
Examples of screen display

- **Menu screen**: When the input source is switched.
- **Status display screen**: When the input source is switched or the volume is adjusted.

**Important information**

**Status display**: The operating status appears briefly on the screen when the input source is switched or the volume is changed.

**NOTE**

- If you operate the menu while playing back 3D video content, the playback video is replaced by the menu screen. The playback video is not displayed behind the menu screen.
- This unit does not show the status display while playing back 3D video content.

### Connecting an HDMI-compatible device

You can connect up to six HDMI-compatible devices to the unit.

**HDMI function**

This unit supports the following HDMI functions:

- 3D
- Deep Color (page 109)
- Auto Lip Sync (page 80, 109)
- x.v.Color, sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color (page 109, 111)
- High definition digital audio format
- ARC (Audio Return Channel)
- Content Type
- CEC (HDMI control)

**Copyright protection system**

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD-Video or DVD-Video via HDMI connection, both this unit and TV or the player need to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV device. This unit supports HDCP.

**NOTE**

- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the user guide of your television or player for more information.

### About HDMI cables

- When a device supporting Deep Color signal transfer is connected, use a cable compatible “High Speed HDMI cable” or “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet”.
- When the ARC function is used, connect a device with a “Standard HDMI cable with Ethernet” or “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet” for HDMI 1.4a.

### HDMI control function (page 55)

This function allows you to operate external devices from this unit and operate this unit from external devices.

**NOTE**

- This unit does not show the status display while playing back 3D video content.
- You cannot operate a TV or Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player that is not compatible with the HDMI control function.

### About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function

The Audio Return Channel in HDMI 1.4a enables a TV, via a single HDMI cable, to send audio data “upstream” to this unit.

**NOTE**

- To enable the ARC function, set “HDMI Control” to “ON” (page 80).
- ARC function is only supported for the HDMI OUT 1 connector. In order to use the ARC function, connect the television to the HDMI OUT 1 connector.
- When connecting a TV that does not support the ARC function, a separate connection using an audio cable is required. In this case, refer to “Connecting a TV” (page 17) for the connection method.

### About 3D function

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of the HDMI 1.4a standards.

For playing the 3D video content, a player, and a TV that support the 3D function of the HDMI 1.4a standards are required in addition to this unit.

**NOTE**

- If a device that does not support 3D video content is connected, the playback video is replaced by the menu screen. The playback video is not displayed behind the menu screen.

### About Content Type

The HDMI specification version 1.4a enables simple, automated picture setting selection with no user intervention.

**NOTE**

To enable the Content Type, set “Video Mode” to “Auto” (page 70).
Connecting an HDMI-compatible device

Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio and video cable (sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDMI cable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- This interface allows transfer of digital video signals and digital audio signals over a single HDMI cable.

- When this unit is connected to other devices with HDMI cables, connect this unit and TV also with an HDMI cable.
- When connecting a device that supports Deep Color transmission, please use a “High Speed HDMI cable” or “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet”.
- Video signals are not output if the input video signals do not match the monitor’s resolution. In this case, switch the Blu-ray Disc/DVD player’s resolution to a resolution with which the monitor is compatible.
- When this unit and monitor are connected with an HDMI cable, if the monitor is not compatible with HDMI audio signal playback, only the video signals are output to the monitor.

NOTE
- The HDMI signal is not simultaneously output to HDMI 1 and HDMI 2. Select the connector that you want to use in advance using “Monitor Out” (page 80) in the menu, or by pressing the HDMI button on the remote control unit or the HDMI OUT button on the main unit.

- HDMI control function is only supported for the HDMI OUT 1 connector. In order to use the HDMI control function, connect the television to the HDMI OUT 1 connector.

- The audio signal from the HDMI output connector (sampling frequency, number of channels, etc.) may be limited by the HDMI audio specifications of the connected device regarding permissible inputs.

- The front panel HDMI input connector is displayed as “HDMI6” in the “Input Setup” – “Input Assign” (page 68) in the menu.

Connecting to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector

When an HDMI/DVI conversion cable (sold separately) is used, the HDMI video signals are converted to DVI signals, allowing connection to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector.

NOTE
- No sound is output when connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector. Make separate audio connections.

Settings related to HDMI connections

Set as necessary. For details, see the respective reference pages.

Input Assign (page 68)

Set this to change the HDMI input connector to which the input source is assigned.

HDMI Setup (page 80)

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

- RGB Range
- HDMI Control
- HDMI Audio Out
- Monitor Out
- Auto Lip Sync
- Standby Source
- Power Off Control

NOTE

The audio signals output from the HDMI connectors are only the HDMI input signals.
Connecting a TV

- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For video connections, see “Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)” (page 14).
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 15).

To listen to TV audio through this device, use the optical digital connection.

**NOTE**

This connection is not required when a TV compatible with the ARC function (Audio Return Channel (HDMI 1.4a standard function) is connected to this unit via an HDMI connection. For details, see “About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function” (page 15) or refer to the instruction manual for your TV.

**Cables used for connections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video cable</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>(sold separately)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component video cable</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical cable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player

- You can enjoy video and audio from a Blu-ray Disc.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 15).

**Cables used for connections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video cable</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>(sold separately)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component video cable</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable</td>
<td>White</td>
<td>(sold separately)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Blu-ray Disc player**

- Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.
- “Input Assign” (page 68)

For HD audio (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus and DTS Express) playback, connect with HDMI (page 15 “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device”).
Connecting a DVD player

- You can enjoy video and audio from a DVD.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 15).

Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video cable (sold separately)</th>
<th>Audio cables (sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video cable (Yellow)</td>
<td>Audio cable (White)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component video cable (Green)</td>
<td>(Blue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Red)</td>
<td>(Red)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (Red)</td>
<td>Coaxial digital cable (Black)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

in Set as Necessary

Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.

*Input Assign* (page 68)

Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

- You can watch satellite or cable TV.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 15).

Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video cable (sold separately)</th>
<th>Audio cables (sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video cable (Yellow)</td>
<td>Audio cable (White)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component video cable (Green)</td>
<td>(Blue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Red)</td>
<td>(Red)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (Red)</td>
<td>Coaxial digital cable (Black)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

in Set as Necessary

Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.

*Input Assign* (page 68)
Connecting a video cassette recorder

- You can record video onto a video cassette tape.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- When recording analog audio, use the analog connection.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 15).

### Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video cable (sold separately)</th>
<th>Component video cable</th>
<th>Audio cable (sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video cable (Yellow)</td>
<td>(Green)</td>
<td>(White)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Blue)</td>
<td>(Blue)</td>
<td>(Red)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Red)</td>
<td>(Red)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

To record video signals through this unit, use the same type of video cable for connection between this unit and the recorder.

Connecting a digital camcorder

- You can enjoy video and audio from a digital camcorder.
- You can enjoy games by connecting a game machine via the AUX1 input connector. In this case, select the input source to “AUX1”.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 15).

### Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video cable (sold separately)</th>
<th>Audio cable (sold separately)</th>
<th>Optical cable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video cable (Yellow)</td>
<td>(White)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Red)</td>
<td>(Red)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate. In this case, use the monitor output of the same connector as the input.

The front panel OPTICAL input terminal is displayed as “OPT3” in the “Input Setup” – “Input Assign” setting (page 68) in the menu.
Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port

You can enjoy music stored on an iPod or USB memory device.

**Cables used for connections.**

To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB cable supplied with the iPod.

**Supported iPod models.**

Made for:
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod with video
- iPod nano (8th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone 3GS

Marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB connection type HDD of the kind to which an AC adapter can be connected to supply power, use the AC adapter.

**NOTE**

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.

Connecting a CD player

You can enjoy CD sound.
Select the connector to use and connect the device.

**Cables used for connections.**

**Audio cable (sold separately)**

Audio cable (White)
(Red)

Optical cable

Set this to change the digital input connector to which the input source is assigned.

*Input Assign* (page 68)
Connecting a CD recorder

- You can record audio on a CD or cassette tape.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- When recording analog audio, use the analog connection.

### Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio cable</th>
<th>White</th>
<th>Red</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optical cable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CD recorder**

**Audio**

To perform digital recording using the digital connector (OPT OUT), assign either one of the digital input connectors to “CDR” by selecting “Input Setup” – “Input Assign” setting (page 68).

The above figure shows an example of changing the assignment of OPT1 connector to “CDR”.

### Connecting a record player

You can enjoy playing records.

#### Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio cable (sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (White)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Red)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Turntable (MM cartridge)**

- This unit is compatible with record players with an MM cartridge. When you connect to a record player with an MC cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.
- When you increase the volume without connecting the record player, there may be “booming” noise from the speakers.

**NOTE**

The SIGNAL GND terminal of this unit is not a safety ground connection. Connect it to reduce noise when noise is excessive. Note that depending on the record player, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.
Connecting an antenna

Connecting a SIRIUS connector

- This unit is a SIRIUS Satellite Radio Ready® receiver. You can receive SIRIUS® Satellite Radio by connecting to the SiriusConnect Home Tuner and subscribing to the SIRIUS service.
- Plug the SIRIUS connector on the SIRIUS service.
- Position the Home Tuner antenna near a south-facing window to receive the best signal.

For details, see “Listening to SIRIUS satellite radio” (page 30).

When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the SiriusConnect Home Tuner.

See page 20 for more details.

NOTE
Keep the power cord unplugged until the SiriusConnect Home Tuner connection have been completed.

Positioning the antenna
For a consistent satellite signal, the antenna must be positioned correctly. Use the following map to determine which area you are in and position the antenna accordingly.

- Area 1: Point the antenna toward the sky in the east, northeast, or southeast, either through a window or outside.
- Area 2: Point the antenna toward the sky in the north or northeast, either through a window or outside.
- Area 3: Point the antenna toward the sky in the north or northwest, either through a window or outside.
- Area 4: Point the antenna toward the sky in the west, northwest, or southwest, either through a window or outside.
- Area 5: Put the antenna outside and point it straight up. The antenna cannot be used indoors.

Connecting an HD Radio receiver

- By connecting a HD Radio antenna to this unit, you can receive HD Radio programs.
- HD Radio broadcasting currently is available in the United States and select other countries.

Direction of broadcasting station
AM loop antenna (for HD Radio broadcasting, supplied)
- To prevent interference, install at least 3.3 ft (1 m) away from the antenna connected to this unit’s other AM tuner terminal.

FM outdoor antenna
- FM indoor antenna (for HD Radio broadcasting, supplied)

When connecting digital audio of the SiriusConnect Home Tuner, perform the setting “Digital”. *Input Assign* (page 88)

in Set as Necessary

When connecting digital of the SiriusConnect Home Tuner, perform the setting “Digital”.

*Input Assign* (page 88)
Connecting an antenna

**AM loop antenna assembly**

1. Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.

2. Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.

**Using the AM loop antenna**

**Suspending on a wall**
Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.

**Standing alone**
Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

**NOTE**
- Do not connect two FM antennas simultaneously.
- Even if an external AM antenna is used, do not disconnect the AM loop antenna.
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.
- If the signal has noise interference, connect the ground terminal (GND) to reduce noise.
- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

---

**Connecting a wireless receiver (RX101)**

By connecting a wireless receiver RX101 (sold separately) to this unit, you can receive and playback audio signals from other devices using the Bluetooth Communication Function.

- Use a Bluetooth device that is A2DP compatible (page 109 “A2DP”).
- You can also use wireless receiver RX101 as an external IR receiver.
- For instructions on the wireless receiver settings, refer to the RX101’s operating instructions.

**Connect a device that has a multichannel output terminal**

- You can connect this unit to an external device fitted with multichannel sound audio output jacks to enjoy music and video.
- The video signal can be connected in the same way as a Blu-ray Disc player / DVD player (page 17 “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player”).

**Cables used for connections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio cable (sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (White)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio cable (Red)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blu-ray Disc player / DVD player / External decoder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

To use wireless receiver RX101 as external IR receiver, set the remote sensor function of this unit to “Remote Lock:ON” (page 89 “Remote control settings”).

---

To play analog signals input from 7.1CH INPUT terminals, set “Input Mode” (page 71) to “7.1CH IN”. “7.1CH IN” can also be selected with A/D on the remote control unit.

When a device is connected to the SBL/SBR terminal of 7.1CH INPUT terminals, set “Amp Assign” (page 78) to “Normal”.

---

**Audio cables**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td>(White)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Red)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

When a device is connected to the SBL/SBR terminal of 7.1CH INPUT terminals, set “Amp Assign” (page 78) to “Normal”.
Connecting to a home network (LAN)

- This unit lets you play via your home network (LAN) music files stored on a computer and music content such as that from Internet radio.
- You can also operate this unit from a computer using the Web control function.
- You can update by downloading the latest firmware from the Marantz website. For more information, on the menu, select “Firmware Update” (page 86).
- See “Network Setup” on the menu (page 81) for more information on network setting.

Cables used for connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cable</th>
<th>(sold separately)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet cable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required system

- Broadband internet connection
- Modem
  - Device that connects to the broadband circuit and conducts communications on the Internet.
  - A type that is integrated with a router is also available.
- Router
  - When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:
    - Built-in DHCP server
      - This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
    - Built-in 100BASE-TX switch
      - When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.

- Ethernet cable (CAT-5 or greater recommended)
  - Use only shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
  - Some flat type Ethernet cables are easily affected by noise. We recommend using a normal type cable.
  - If you have an Internet provider contract for a line on which network settings are made manually, make the settings at “Network Setup” (page 81).
  - With this unit, it is possible to use the DHCP and Auto IP functions to make the network settings automatically.
  - When using this unit with the broadband router’s DHCP function enabled, this unit automatically performs the IP address setting and other settings.
  - When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, make the settings for the IP address, etc., at “Network Setup” (page 81).
  - When setting manually, check the setting contents with the network administrator.

NOTE

- A contract with an ISP is required to connect to the Internet. No additional contract is needed if you already have a broadband connection to the Internet.
- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact an ISP or a computer shop for details.
- Marantz assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any communication errors or troubles resulting from customer’s network environment or connected devices.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE-compatible router is required if you have a contract for a type of line set by PPPoE.
- Do not connect an NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port/Ethernet connector on your computer.

For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.
Playback (Basic operation)

- Selecting the input source (page 25)
- Adjusting the master volume (page 26)
- Turning off the sound temporarily (page 26)

- Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player (page 26)
- Playing a CD player (page 26)
- Playing an iPod® (page 27)
- Playing a USB memory device (page 28)
- Tuning in radio stations (page 30)
- Playing a network audio (page 34)

- Selecting a listening mode (Surround mode) (page 44)

Playback (Advanced operation) (page 55)

Important information

Before starting playback, make the connections between the different components and the settings on this unit.

NOTE

Also refer to the operating instructions of the connected components when playing them.

Selecting the input source

Press the input source select button (BD, DVD, VCR, SAT, GAME, AUX1, NET/USB, TV, CD, CDR, SATR, TUNE, M-XPort, SIRIUS, CDR, CD, TV, HD Radio, PHONO) twice to play back that source. The desired input source can be selected directly.

You can also use the following operation to select an input source.

- Select input source “PHONO” to play back music from a record player connected to the PHONO input connector.
- Select the input source “PHONO” using one of the following methods.
  1. “Source select” menu (“Using the “Source Select” menu” provided on the right)
  2. INPUT ▲▼ on the remote control unit ("Operating the remote control unit" provided on the right)
  3. INPUT SELECTOR knob on the main unit ("Operating the main unit" provided on the right)
- Select input source “SIRIUS” with SATR button.

Using the “Source Select” menu

1. Press AMP and the press SOURCE SEL.
2. Display the “Source Select” menu.
3. • Select the input source, then press ENTER.

The currently selected input source is highlighted.

- When using with an iPod connected directly to the USB port of this unit, select “NET/USB” for the input source.
- Input sources that are not going to be used can be set ahead of time. Make this setting at “Source Delete” (page 84).
- To turn off the source selection menu without selecting an input source, press SOURCE SEL again.

Using the button on the remote control unit

Press INPUT ▲▼.
- When INPUT ▲▼ is pressed, the input source is switched in the order shown below.

Using the knob on the main unit

Turn INPUT SELECTOR.
- Turning INPUT SELECTOR switches the input source, as shown below.
**Adjusting the master volume**

Use **VOLUME** to adjust the volume.

- **When the “Volume Display” setting ([page 84]) is “Relative”**
  [Adjustable range] –80.5dB – 18.0dB

- **When the “Volume Display” setting ([page 84]) is “Absolute”**
  [Adjustable range] 0.0 – 99.0

  • The adjustable range may vary depending on input signal and channel level settings.

You can also operate via the main unit. In this case, perform the following operations.

Turn **VOLUME** to adjust the volume.

**Turning off the sound temporarily**

Press **MUTE**.

- The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” ([page 84]).
- To cancel, press **MUTE** again. Muting can also be canceled by adjusting the master volume.

**Set the front speakers to be used**

Press **SPKR A/B**.

- Each time you press **SPKR A/B**, the front speaker setting will change as follows.

  - Front A
  - Front B
  - Front A+B

**Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player**

The following describes the procedure for playing Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player.

1. **Prepare for playback.**
   ① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
   ② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.
   ③ Load the disc in the player.

2. **Press ON to turn on power to the unit.**

3. **Press BD or DVD twice to switch the input source for the player used for playback.**

4. **Play the component connected to this unit.**
   Make the necessary settings on the player (language setting, subtitles setting, etc.) beforehand.

**Playing a CD player**

The following describes the procedure for playing CD player.

1. **Prepare for playback.**
   ① Turn on the power of the subwoofer and player.
   ② Load the disc in the player.

2. **Press ON to turn on power to the unit.**

3. **Press CD twice to switch the input source to the CD player.**

4. **Play the component connected to this unit.**
Playing an iPod®

You can play back both video, photo and audio.

1 Connect the iPod® to the USB port (page 20 “Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port”).

2 Press ON to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press NET/USB twice to switch the input source to “NET/USB”.

4 Use △∇ to select “iPod”, then press ENTER or ‡.

5 Press SEARCH/INFO and hold it down for 2 seconds or more to select the display mode.
   • There are two modes for displaying the contents recorded on the iPod.
     - Remote mode
       Display iPod information on the TV screen.
       - The unit display shows single-byte alphanumeric characters and some symbols only. "." is displayed in place of incompatible characters.
       - In “Remote mode”, the iPod display is as shown at right.
     - Direct mode
       Display iPod information on the iPod screen.
       - “Direct iPod” is displayed on the display of this unit.
     - Only the sound is played.

6 Use △∇ to select the item, then press ENTER or ‡ to select the file to be played.

7 Press ENTER, ‡ or ▶.
   Playback starts.

NOTE
If the connections screen is not displayed, the iPod may not be properly connected. Reconnect it.

NOTE
• You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “NET/USB” (page 85). Press △∇ to return to the original screen.
• To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in M-DAX mode (page 76). The default setting is “OFF”.
• In Remote mode, press STATUS during playback to check the title name, artist name, and album name.

NOTE
• Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
• Note that Marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.
Playing a USB memory device

Playing back music or still picture (JPEG) files recorded on a USB memory device.

Important information

USB memory devices
A USB memory device can be connected to the USB port of this unit to play music and still picture (JPEG) files stored on the USB memory device.
Also, files stored on an iPod can be played when the iPod is connected directly to the USB port of this unit. See “Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port” (page 20).

• Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class and MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) standards can be played on this unit.
• This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in “FAT16” or “FAT32” format.

Album art function
When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.

Slide show function
Still picture (JPEG) files stored on USB memory devices can be played as slide shows.
The duration each picture is displayed can be set.

This unit plays back image (JPEG) files in the orientation in which they are stored in the folder.

[Compatible formats]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Sampling frequency</th>
<th>Bit rate</th>
<th>Extension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WMA (Windows Media Audio)</td>
<td>32/44.1/48 kHz</td>
<td>48 – 192 kbps</td>
<td>.wma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)</td>
<td>32/44.1/48 kHz</td>
<td>32 – 320 kbps</td>
<td>.mp3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAV</td>
<td>32/44.1/48 kHz</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>.wav</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPEG-4 AAC</td>
<td>32/44.1/48 kHz</td>
<td>16 – 320 kbps</td>
<td>.aac/.m4a/.mp4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)</td>
<td>32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>.flac</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Compatible formats]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Components available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WMA (Windows Media Audio)</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAV</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPEG-4 AAC</td>
<td>✔️ 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
2. This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
3. This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.

Copyright-protected files can be played on certain portable players compatible with MTP.

Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.

Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer’s settings.

1.AV70SU_ENG.indd   28 2010/08/23   18:32:36
Playing files stored on USB memory devices

1 Connect the USB memory device to the USB port (page 20 “Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port”).

2 Press NET/USB twice to switch the input source to “NET/USB”.

3 Press △ ▽ to select “USB”, then press ENTER or ▶.

4 Press △ ▽ to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or ▶.

5 Press △ ▽ to select the file, then press ENTER, ▶ or ▶. Playback starts.

NOTE
- Selecting 🌟 in the “Source Select” menu, lets you directly select “USB”.

USB operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>△ ▽</td>
<td>Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △ ▽)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and release)</td>
<td>Enter / Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and hold)</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Page search ▶ 1 / Character search ▶ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▶</td>
<td>Playback / Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▶</td>
<td>Auto search (cue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▶</td>
<td>Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▶</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 8</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPEAT</td>
<td>Repeat playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANDOM</td>
<td>Random playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default : Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default : Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “NET/USB” (page 85). Press △ ▽ ▶ ▶ to return to the original screen.
- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in M-DAX mode (page 76). The default setting is “OFF”.
- If the USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions, only the top partition can be selected.
- This unit is compatible with MP3 files conforming to “MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3” standards.
- Note that Marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.
- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- Marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or be supplied power. When using a USB portable hard disk that can draw power from an AC adapter, we recommend using the AC adapter.
- It is not possible to connect and use a computer via the USB port of this unit using a USB cable.
Listening to SIRIUS satellite radio

1. Press SATR twice to switch the input source to “SIRIUS”.

2. Use TUNING + or TUNING – to select the channel.
   When the channel is tuned in, the name of the song and artist are displayed.

- The channel switches continuously when TUNING + or TUNING – is pressed and held.
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “TUNER” (page 85). Press △ ▽ to return to the original screen.
- The song title, artist name, composer name, category and reception level can be checked by pressing STATUS.

Tuning in radio stations

Important information

About SIRIUS XM radio

To listen to Satellite Radio, you’ll need to connect either a SIRIUS or XM Satellite Radio tuner (sold separately) to your satellite-ready receiver. Satellite Radio is available to residents of the US (except Alaska and Hawaii) and Canada.

Satellite Radio delivers a variety of commercial-free music from categories ranging from Pop, Rock, Country, R&B, Dance, Jazz, Classical and many more plus coverage of all the top professional and college sports including play by play games from select leagues and teams. Additional programming includes expert sports talk, uncensored entertainment, comedy, family programming, local traffic and weather and news from your most trusted sources.

Whether you purchase a SIRIUS or XM tuner, you’ll need to activate and subscribe to begin enjoying the service. Easy to follow installation and setup instructions are provided with the satellite tuners. Whichever service you choose, there are a variety of programming packages available, including the option of adding “The Best of SIRIUS” programming to your XM tuner or “The Best of XM” programming to your SIRIUS tuner, enabling you to enjoy the most popular programming among both services. The “Best of” packages are not available to SIRIUS or XM Canada subscribers at this time.

Family friendly packages are also available to restrict channels featuring content that may be inappropriate for children.

To subscribe to XM, U.S. customers should visit xmradio.com or call 1-800-XMRADIO (1-800-967-2346); Canadian customers should visit xmradio.ca or call XM Listener Care at 1-877-GETXMSR (1-877-438-9677).

To subscribe to SIRIUS, U.S. and Canadian customers can call 1-888-539-SIRI (1-888-539-7474) or visit sirius.com (US) or siriuscanada.ca (Canada).

SIRIUS XM radio legal

SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All other marks and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved. SIRIUS and XM subscriptions sold separately. Taxes and one-time activation fee may apply. XM tuners and home docks or SIRIUS tuners (each sold separately) are required to receive the SIRIUS or XM satellite radio service. All programming and fees subject to change. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SIRIUS or XM Satellite Radio Systems. Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.

Using the HD Radio™ receiver

HD Radio stations offer higher sound quality than conventional FM/AM broadcasts. It is also possible to receive data services and select broadcasts from among up to eight multicast programs.

HD Radio Technology provides higher quality sound than conventional broadcasts and allows reception of data services.

- FM sounds as sensational as CDs
- AM sounds as rich as analog FM stereo
- A variety of “data services”, including text-based information, song title, artist name, album name, genre, etc. can be received.

Furthermore, in addition to conventional broadcasts, with HD Radio broadcasting it is possible to choose from up to 8 multicast programs.

For detailed information on HD Radio Technology, please go to “www. hdradio.com”.

SIRIUS XM Radio legal

SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All other marks and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved. SIRIUS and XM subscriptions sold separately. Taxes and a one-time activation fee may apply. XM tuners and home docks or SIRIUS tuners (each sold separately) are required to receive the SIRIUS or XM satellite radio service. All programming and fees subject to change. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SIRIUS or XM Satellite Radio Systems. Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.

Listening to SIRIUS satellite radio

1. Press SATR twice to switch the input source to “SIRIUS”.

2. Use TUNING + or TUNING – to select the channel.
   When the channel is tuned in, the name of the song and artist are displayed.

- The channel switches continuously when TUNING + or TUNING – is pressed and held.
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “TUNER” (page 85). Press △ ▽ to return to the original screen.
- The song title, artist name, composer name, category and reception level can be checked by pressing STATUS.

Using the HD Radio™ receiver

HD Radio stations offer higher sound quality than conventional FM/AM broadcasts. It is also possible to receive data services and select broadcasts from among up to eight multicast programs.

HD Radio Technology provides higher quality sound than conventional broadcasts and allows reception of data services.

- FM sounds as sensational as CDs
- AM sounds as rich as analog FM stereo
- A variety of “data services”, including text-based information, song title, artist name, album name, genre, etc. can be received.

Furthermore, in addition to conventional broadcasts, with HD Radio broadcasting it is possible to choose from up to 8 multicast programs.

For detailed information on HD Radio Technology, please go to “www. hdradio.com”.

SIRIUS XM Radio legal

SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All other marks and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved. SIRIUS and XM subscriptions sold separately. Taxes and a one-time activation fee may apply. XM tuners and home docks or SIRIUS tuners (each sold separately) are required to receive the SIRIUS or XM satellite radio service. All programming and fees subject to change. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SIRIUS or XM Satellite Radio Systems. Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.

Listening to SIRIUS satellite radio

1. Press SATR twice to switch the input source to “SIRIUS”.

2. Use TUNING + or TUNING – to select the channel.
   When the channel is tuned in, the name of the song and artist are displayed.

- The channel switches continuously when TUNING + or TUNING – is pressed and held.
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “TUNER” (page 85). Press △ ▽ to return to the original screen.
- The song title, artist name, composer name, category and reception level can be checked by pressing STATUS.

Using the HD Radio™ receiver

HD Radio stations offer higher sound quality than conventional FM/AM broadcasts. It is also possible to receive data services and select broadcasts from among up to eight multicast programs.

HD Radio Technology provides higher quality sound than conventional broadcasts and allows reception of data services.

- FM sounds as sensational as CDs
- AM sounds as rich as analog FM stereo
- A variety of “data services”, including text-based information, song title, artist name, album name, genre, etc. can be received.

Furthermore, in addition to conventional broadcasts, with HD Radio broadcasting it is possible to choose from up to 8 multicast programs.

For detailed information on HD Radio Technology, please go to “www. hdradio.com”.

SIRIUS XM Radio legal

SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All other marks and logos are the property of their respective owners. All rights reserved. SIRIUS and XM subscriptions sold separately. Taxes and a one-time activation fee may apply. XM tuners and home docks or SIRIUS tuners (each sold separately) are required to receive the SIRIUS or XM satellite radio service. All programming and fees subject to change. It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SIRIUS or XM Satellite Radio Systems. Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
- **Checking the SIRIUS signal strength and radio ID**

  1. Press STATUS until “SIGNAL” appears on the display.
     The display will switch as shown below, depending on the reception conditions.

     | Display  | Status          |
     |---------|-----------------|
     | EXCELLENT | Signal strength is excellent |
     | GOOD     | Signal strength is good   |
     | WEAK     | Signal strength is weak   |
     | NO SIGNAL| No signal          |

  2. Adjust the position of the antenna until “SIGNAL: EXCELLENT” is shown on the display.

  3. Press STATUS until the channel (example: “SR001”) is displayed.

  4. Press TUNING + or TUNING – and select channel 0 (SR000), Channel No. and Sirius ID are alternately shown on the display.

     ![Screenshot of Sirius ID](image)
     • Write your own SIRIUS ID for storage use.

     Sirius ID:

     ![Sirius ID](image)

- **Presetting radio channels (Preset memory)**

  Your favorite broadcast channels can be preset so that you can tune them in easily. Up to 56 channels can be preset.

  1. Tune in the broadcast channel you want to preset.

  2. Press MEMORY.

  3. Press SHIFT to select the block (A to G) in which to preset the channel (1 to 8 per block), then press PRESET +, PRESET – or 1 – 8 to select the preset number.

  4. Press MEMORY again to complete the setting.
     • To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

- **Listening to preset channels**

  Press PRESET +, PRESET – to select the desired preset channel, then press ENTER.

  • Preset channels can also be selected by pressing SHIFT/TOP MENU (Block) and 1 – 8 (Channel).

- **Searching categories**

  1. Press \(\Rightarrow\).

  ![Screenshot of category selection](image)

  2. Use \(\Rightarrow\) to select the category, to use \(\Delta\) \(\nabla\) to select the desired channel.

- **Accessing SIRIUS satellite radio channels directly**

  1. Press SEARCH/INFO.

  ![Screenshot of channel input](image)

  2. Press 0 – 9 to input the channel.
     Example: Accessing channel “SR123”:
     Press 1, 2 and 3.
     • If no button is pressed within several seconds, the channel automatically switches to the one whose number has been input.

  3. Press ENTER to set that channel.
     Reception switches to the selected channel.

     • “UPDATING” is displayed while the encoding code is being updated.
     • “SIRIUS UPDATING” is displayed when updating SIRIUS tuner firmware.
     • Refer to “Troubleshooting” – “SIRIUS Satellite Radio” (page 113) regarding other messages.
**Tuning in radio stations**

**Parental Lock**

1. Tune to the channel you want to lock.
2. Press ENTER for at least 3 seconds.
   “Enter Lock Code” is displayed.
3. Enter the 4-digit lock code using 
   0 – 9. When you enter the correct code, the corresponding channel is locked.
4. Press ENTER.

- Channels under Parental Lock cannot be tuned in by performing channel up/down or by category search.
- Channels stored in preset memory can be tuned in by the preset channel select operation, even if Parental Lock is applied.
- When a channel to which Parental Lock is applied is being played, Parental Lock for that channel is cancelled by performing step 2.
- See “Edit Lock Cord” (page 68) for the method of changing Parental Lock Cord.
- You can also set “Parental Lock” (page 67) from the menu.

**SIRIUS operation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>△▽&lt; &gt;</td>
<td>Cursor operation / Category search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>To parental lock password check screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Press and hold)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Direct search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TUNING +, –</td>
<td>Channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 – 9</td>
<td>Preset channel selection (1 – 8) / Direct frequency tuning (0 – 9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMORY</td>
<td>Preset memory registration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Listening to HD Radio stations**

1. Press TUNE twice to switch the input source to “HD Radio”.
2. Press BAND to select “FM” or “AM”.
   - FM When listening to an FM broadcast.
   - AM When listening to an AM broadcast.
3. Tune in the desired broadcast station.
   - **To tune in automatically (Auto tuning)**
     Press T.MODE to light the “HD-AUTO” or “AUTO” indicator on the display, then use TUNING + or TUNING – to select the station you want to hear.
     - The HD indicator lights on the display when an HD Radio station is tuned in.
     - When “HD-AUTO” (tuning mode) is selected, only HD Radio stations are tuned in.
     - If “AUTO” (tuning mode) is selected, both HD Radio and analog stations are tuned in.
   - **To tune in manually (Manual tuning)**
     Press T.MODE to turn off the display’s “AUTO” indicator, then use TUNING + or TUNING – to select the station you want to hear.
     - If the desired station cannot be tuned in with auto tuning, tune it in manually.
     - When tuning in stations manually, press and hold TUNING + or TUNING – to change frequencies continuously.
     - You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “TUNER” (page 85). Press △▽< > to return to the original screen.
Selecting audio programs
HD Radio Technology enables stations to broadcast multiple Audio Program and data services on HD2 / HD3 / HD4 channels.

Press △ ▽ to select the audio program.
If the station you are listening to has multiple audio programs, “HD1” is indicated on the display. If it only has one audio program, “HD” is indicated.

Presetting radio stations (Manual preset)
Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily. Up to 56 stations can be preset.

- Stations can be preset automatically at “Auto Preset” (page 67). If “Auto Preset” is performed after performing “Manual Preset”, the “Manual Preset” settings will be overwritten.

1. Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset.
2. Press MEMORY.
3. Press SHIFT/TOP MENU to select the block (A to G) in which to preset the channel (1 to 8 per block), then press PRESET +, PRESET – or 1 – 8 to select the preset number.
4. Press MEMORY again to complete the setting.
   - To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Tuning in radio stations

Direct frequency tuning
You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

1. Press SEARCH/INFO.
2. Input frequencies using the 0 – 9.
   - If < is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.
3. When setting is completed, press ENTER. The preset frequency is tuned in.

Check the HD Radio reception information
Press STATUS while an HD Radio broadcast is being received. The current reception information is shown on the display.

- Normal
- Frequency / Signal strength
- Station name / Program and Program type
- Title name / Artist name
- Album name / Genre name

NOTE
If the station signal weakens while receiving a digital broadcast (while HD and text is displayed), the mode automatically switches to the analog reception mode (the reception frequency is displayed). Because of this, the HD indicator and text may flicker if the station signal level is weak and unstable.

Default settings
Block (A – G) and Channel (1 – 8) Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Block (A – G) and Channel (1 – 8)</th>
<th>Default Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1 – A8</td>
<td>87.5 / 87.9 / 89.1 / 93.3 / 97.9 / 98.1 / 98.9 / 100.1 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1 – B8</td>
<td>101.9 / 102.7 / 107.9 / 90.1 / 90.1 / 90.1 / 90.1 / 90.1 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1 – C8</td>
<td>530 / 600 / 930 / 1000 / 1120 / 1210 / 1400 / 1710 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1 – D8</td>
<td>90.1 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1 – E8</td>
<td>90.1 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1 – F8</td>
<td>90.1 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1 – G8</td>
<td>90.1 MHz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name) (page 68). Listening to preset stations

1. Press SHIFT/TOP MENU to select the memory block (A to G).
2. Press PRESET +, PRESET – or 1 – 8 to select the desired preset channel.

You can also operate via the main unit. In this case, perform the following operations. Press < ▽ to select the preset radio station.
Playing a network audio

Follow this procedure to play Internet radio stations or music or still picture (JPEG) files stored on a computer.

Important information

About the internet radio function

- Internet radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet radio stations from around the world can be received.
- This unit is equipped with the following Internet radio functions:
  - Stations can be selected by genre and region.
  - Up to 56 Internet radio stations can be preset.
  - Internet radio stations in MP3 and WMA (Windows Media Audio) format can be listened to.
  - Your favorite radio stations can be registered by accessing an exclusive Marantz Internet radio URL from a Web browser on a computer.
  - The function is managed for individual users, so you must provide your MAC or e-mail address.
  - The radio station database service may be suspended without notice.
  - This unit’s Internet radio station list is created using a radio station database service (vTuner). This database service provides a list edited and created for this unit.

Media player

This function lets you play music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a computer (media server) connected to this unit via a network.

With this unit’s network audio playback function, connection to the server is possible using one of the technologies below.
- Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service
- Windows Media DRM10

Album art function

When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.

For music files in WMA (Windows Media Audio) format, the album art is only played when using Windows Media Player ver. 11.

Slide show function

Still picture (JPEG) files stored in folders on a media server can be played as slide shows. The duration each picture is displayed can be set.

This unit plays back image (JPEG) files in the orientation in which they are stored in the folder.

Compatible formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Internet radio</th>
<th>Media server</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WMA (Windows Media Audio)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAV</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPEG-4 AAC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.
- Media server
  - This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
  - This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
  - This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
  - WAV format Quantization bit rate: 16 bits.
  - FLAC format Quantization bit rate: 16/24 bits.
- Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer’s settings.

Tuning in radio stations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>△ ▽ ✓</td>
<td>Cursor operation/Multicast switching (△ ▽)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Direct frequency tuning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAND</td>
<td>FM/AM switching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T.MODE</td>
<td>Switch search modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TUNING +, –</td>
<td>Tuning (up/down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 – 9</td>
<td>Direct frequency tuning (0 – 9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMORY</td>
<td>Preset memory registration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
About Flickr
Flickr is an online photograph sharing service that started in 2004. You can use the this unit to view photographs that have been made public by Flickr users. You do not need an account to use Flickr. To view photographs that you recorded yourself, you need an account in order to upload these photographs to the Flickr server. For details, see the Flickr homepage.
http://www.flickr.com/

About Napster
Napster is a monthly subscription music distribution service provided by Napster LLC. This service allows users to download and play pieces of music they want to hear on this unit. Before you can use Napster, you will need to visit the Napster website on your PC to create an account and register as a member. For details, access the following site:
http://www.napster.com/choose/index_default.html

About Pandora
Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet radio service created by the Music Genome Project. When you first listen to Pandora, it is necessary to subscribe to a Pandora account at the Pandora homepage by your PC and register this machine. See the Pandora homepage for details.
http://www.pandora.com/marantz

About Rhapsody
Rhapsody is a paid music broadcast service of RealNetworks. When you first listen to Rhapsody, it is necessary to subscribe to a Rhapsody account at the Rhapsody homepage by your PC and register this machine. See the Rhapsody homepage for details.
http://www.rhapsody.com/marantz

About Internet Radio
There are many Internet radio stations on the Internet, and the quality of the programs they broadcast as well as the bit rate of the tracks varies widely. Generally, the higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but depending on the communication lines and server traffic, the music or audio signals being streamed may be interrupted. Inversely, lower bit rates mean a lower sound quality but less tendency for the sound to be interrupted.

Listening to Internet Radio

1. Prepare for playback.
   • Check the network environment, then turn on this unit’s power (page 24 “Connecting to a home network (LAN)”).
   • If settings are required, make the “Network Connecting” (page 81).

2. Press NET/USB twice to switch the input source to “NET/USB”.

3. Press △ ▼ to select “Internet Radio”, then press ENTER or ▶.

4. Press △ ▼ to select the item you want to play, then press ENTER or ▶.

5. Repeat step 4 until the station list is displayed.

6. Press △ ▼ to select the station, then press ENTER or ▶.

Playback starts once buffering reaches “100%”.

• There are many Internet radio stations on the Internet, and the quality of the programs they broadcast as well as the bit rate of the tracks varies widely.
• Generally, the higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but depending on the communication lines and server traffic, the music or audio signals being streamed may be interrupted. Inversely, lower bit rates mean a lower sound quality but less tendency for the sound to be interrupted.
• “Server Full” or “Connection Down” is displayed if the station is busy or not broadcasting.

Recently played internet radio stations
Recently played internet radio stations can be selected from “Recently Played”.
Up to 20 stations stored in “Recently Played”.

1. Press △ ▼ to select “Recently Played”, then press ENTER or ▶.

2. Press △ ▼ to select the item you want to play, then press ENTER or ▶.

Searching stations by keyword (Alphabetic strings)

1. Press △ ▼ to select “Search by Keyword”, then press ENTER or ▶.

2. Input the characters, then press ENTER.

For character input, see page 65.

Playing a network audio
Playing a network audio

### Presetting internet radio stations

Preset Internet radio stations can be selected directly.

1. While the Internet radio station you want to preset is playing, press MEMORY.
2. Press \(\Delta\;\nabla\) to select “Preset”, then press ENTER.
3. Press SHIFT/TOP MENU, then press PRESET +, PRESET – or 1 – 8 to select the desired preset number.
4. Press MEMORY again to complete the setting.

The Internet radio station is now preset.

**NOTE**

If registered at a number that has already been preset, the previously registered setting is cleared.

### Registering internet radio stations as your favorites

Favorites are listed at the top of the menu screen, so when a station is registered as a favorite it can be tuned in easily.

1. Press MEMORY while the Internet radio station you want to register is playing.
2. Press \(\Delta\;\nabla\) to select “Favorites”, then press ENTER.
3. Press \(\leftarrow\) to select “Add”. The Internet radio station is registered.
   - If you do not want to register the station, press \(\rightarrow\).

### Listening to internet radio stations registered in your favorites

1. Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select \(\bullet\) (page 25).
2. Press NET/USB and then press \(\Delta\;\nabla\) to select the Internet radio station, then press ENTER or \(\rightarrow\). This unit automatically connects to the Internet and playback begins.

### Listening to preset internet radio stations

After pressing SHIFT/TOP MENU, press PRESET +, PRESET – or 1 – 8 to select the registered preset number. This unit automatically connects to the Internet and playback begins.

### Clearing internet radio stations from your favorites

1. Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select \(\bullet\) (page 25).
2. Press NET/USB and then press \(\Delta\;\nabla\) to select the Internet radio station you want to clear, then press MEMORY.

### Internet radio operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta;\nabla)</td>
<td>Cursor operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and release)</td>
<td>Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and hold)</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Page search (\leftarrow) / Character search (\rightarrow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 8</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMORY</td>
<td>Favorites / Preset memory registration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default : Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default : Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\*1 When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH/INFO, then press \(\leftarrow\) (previous page) or \(\rightarrow\) (next page). To cancel, press \(\Delta\;\nabla\) or SEARCH/INFO twice.

\*2 When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH/INFO twice, then press \(\leftarrow\) to select the first letter you want to search mode.
   - If it is not possible to search the list, “unsorted list.” is displayed.
   To cancel, press \(\Delta\;\nabla\) or SEARCH/INFO.

If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character search.
Playing a network audio

Playing files stored on a computer

Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

1. Prepare for playback.
   ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (page 24 “Connecting to a home network (LAN)”).
   ② If settings are required, make the “Network Connecting” (page 81).
   ③ Prepare the computer (Computer’s operating instructions).

2. Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select (page 25).

3. Press NET/USB and then use △ to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER or →.

4. Use △ to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or →.

5. Repeat step 4 until the file is displayed.

6. Press △ to select the file, then press ENTER or →. Playback starts once buffering reaches “100%”.

- Connections to the required system and specific settings must be made in order to play music files (page 24).
- Before starting, you must launch the computer’s server software and set the files as server contents. For details, see the operating instructions of your server software.
- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.
- WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player Ver. 11.

Media server operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>△ ▽ △</td>
<td>Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △ ▽)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Enter / Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and hold)</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Page search / Character search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 8</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMORY</td>
<td>Favorites / Preset memory registration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Repeat playback (page 71 “Repeat”)
- Random playback (page 71 “Random”)

1. When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH/INFO, then press ◀ (previous page) or ▶ (next page).
   To cancel, press △ or SEARCH/INFO twice.
2. When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH/INFO twice, then press ◀ to select the first letter you want to search mode.
   If it is not possible to search the list, “unsorted list.” is displayed.
   To cancel, press △ or SEARCH/INFO.

If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character search.
Playing a network audio

Viewing photographs on the Flickr site

You can view photographs shared by particular users, or all of the photographs shared on Flickr.

Viewing photographs shared by particular users

1. Prepare for playback.
   ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit’s power (page 24 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
   ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (page 81).

2. Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select (page 25).

3. Press NET/USB and then use △▽ to select “Add Flickr Contact”, then press ENTER or ▶.

4. Enter “Username”.
   • For character input, see page 65.

5. After inputting the “Username”, then press ENTER.
   The “Username” entered in step 4 is displayed.
   • If the Username you typed in cannot be found, “The Flickr Contact you entered could not be found” appears. Check and type in the correct Username.

6. Press △▽ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or ▶.
   - Favorites Displays the favorite photographs of the specified user.
   - Photostream Displays a list of shared photographs.
   - PhotoSets Displays the folder (photograph album) list.
   - Contacts Displays a Username registered for Flickr Contact by a particular user.
   - Remove this Contact Deletes a user from Flickr Contact.

7. Press △▽ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▶.
   The selected file is displayed.

Viewing all photographs on Flickr

1. Prepare for playback.
   ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit’s power (page 24 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
   ② If settings are required, make the “Network Connecting” (page 81).

2. Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select (page 25).

3. Press NET/USB and then use △▽ to select “All Content”, then press ENTER or ▶.

4. Press △▽ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or ▶.
   - Interestingness Displays photographs that are popular from the number of user comments or number of times they are added as favorites.
   - Recent Displays the most recently added photographs.
   - Search by text Search for photographs by keyword.

5. Press △▽ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▶.
   The selected file is displayed.

NOTE
Depending on the file format, some photographs cannot be viewed.

Flickr operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>△▽</td>
<td>Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and release)</td>
<td>Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and hold)</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Page Search*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 8</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default : Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default : Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH/INFO, then press ▲ (previous page) or ▶ (next page). To cancel, press △▽ or SEARCH/INFO.
Playing a network audio

Listening to Napster

Prepare for playback.  
① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit’s power (page 24 “Connecting to a home network (LAN”).
② If settings are required, make the “Network Connecting” (page 81).

Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select (page 25).

Press NET/USB and then use ▲ ▼ to input “Username” and “Password”.

After inputting the “Username” and “Password”, select “OK”, then press ENTER.

If the “Username” and “Password” match, the top menu for Napster is displayed.

NOTE
- The password should be no longer than 99 characters.
- Press RETURN to cancel the input. When “Cancel input?” is displayed, select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

Searching from Napster menu

1 Use ▲ ▼ to select item or folder, then press ENTER or ▶.

2 Repeat step 1 until the track is displayed.

3 Use ▲ ▼ to select the track item, then press ENTER or ▶.

Entering a character search for the track you want to listen to

1 Press SEARCH/INFO.

2 Use ▲ ▼ to select the search item, then press ENTER.

The search display appears.

You can search by artist name, album name or track name.

3 Input the characters, then press ENTER.

Registering tracks in my Napster library

1 Press ▶ while the track you wish to register is playing.

2 Select “Add to my library”, then press ENTER or ▶.

The track is entered in the Library.

Listening to tracks registered in my Napster library

1 Use ▲ ▼ to select “My Napster Library”, then press ENTER or ▶.

2 Use ▲ ▼ to select the information or track, then press ENTER.

To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in M-DAX mode (page 76). The default setting is “OFF”.

You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “NET/USB” (page 85). Press ▲ ▼ ▶ ▷ to return to the original screen.

Use STATUS to switch between displaying the title name, artist name or album name.
### Playing a network audio

#### Napster operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESET +, –</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>△△↓↓</td>
<td>Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △△)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and release)</td>
<td>Enter / Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER (Press and hold)</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Search menu / Page search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>►</td>
<td>Playback / Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◀▶</td>
<td>Auto search (cue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 8</td>
<td>Preset channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT</td>
<td>Preset channel block selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Repeat playback (page 71 “Repeat”)
* Random playback (page 71 “Random”)

* When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH/INFO twice, then press ◀ (previous page) or ▶ (next page).

To cancel, press △△ or SEARCH/INFO.

### Listening to Pandora

1. **Prepare for playback.**
   ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit’s power (page 24 “Connecting to a home network (LAN”).
   ② If settings are required, make the “Network Connecting” (page 81).

2. **Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select **P** (page 25). Then press NET/USB.

3. **If you have a Pandora account, press △△ to select “I have a Pandora account”, then press ENTER or ▶.**

4. **Input “Email address” and “Password”.”**

5. **After inputting the “Email address” and “Password”, select “OK”, then press ENTER.**
   If the “Email address” and “Password” match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.
   
   **NOTE**
   Press RETURN to cancel the input. When “Cancel input?” is displayed, select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

---

**I have a Pandora account**

Please go to [http://www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com) to register. Your activation code is 4DA2C67B.

**I am new to Pandora**

Please go to [http://www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com) to register. Your activation code is 4DA2C67B.

---

**Repeat playback**

**Random playback**
Creating an original radio station

You can create up to 100 original radio stations.

1. Use \(\uparrow\downarrow\) to select “New Station”, then press ENTER or \(\triangleright\).

   - Use \(\uparrow\downarrow\) to select “New Station”, then press ENTER or \(\triangleright\).

2. Input a “Track Name” or “Artist Name”, then press ENTER.
   - For character input, see page 65.

3. Use \(\uparrow\downarrow\) to select “Search by artist” or “Search by track”, then press ENTER.
   - You can search and display a list by track or artist.

4. Press \(\uparrow\downarrow\), select a file (e.g. D&M2) from the list, and press ENTER or \(\triangleright\).
   - Selected file is played back.
   - “Radio” is added to the end of a filename, and your original radio station is created (e.g. D&M2 Radio).

Listening to a created radio station

Listening to a created radio station (e.g. D&M2 Radio)

By specifying your favorite track or artist name, music that has a similar rhythm or sound is chosen and streamed.

Press \(\uparrow\downarrow\) and select the radio station (“D&M2 Radio”) that you want to listen to, and press ENTER or \(\triangleright\).

- In Pandora, you can search for the track name or artist name using “D&M2” as a keyword.
- When the search is complete, tracks that have a similar rhythm or sound are streamed.

Listening to created radio stations at random

Use \(\uparrow\downarrow\) to select “Quick Mix”, then press ENTER or \(\triangleright\).

- Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.

Arranging tracks within radio stations

You can sort tracks by operating the Pandora menu screen while a track is playing.

Press \(\uparrow\downarrow\) while a track is playing.

- The Pandora menu screen is displayed.

- Press when you like the track that is being played.
  - It will return to the Play Screen. And (Thumbs up) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)

- Press when you don’t like the track that is being played.
  - It will return to the Play Screen. And (Thumbs down) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)

- Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.

- Creates a Station for the Track or Artist being played.
  - Bookmarks the track currently being played.
  - You can check on a computer or iPhone etc.
  - For details, see the Pandora web page.

- Press when you don’t like the track that is being played.
  - The track will not be played for 1 month.

- Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.

   - NOTE
     - You can Skip up to 6 Tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.
     - You can create up to 100 New Stations (radio stations).
Playing a network audio

Sign out

Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.

1 While the Pandora top menu is displayed, press RETURN.

2 When the popup menu appears, press △ ▽ to select “Yes”.

Pandora operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>△ ▽ &lt; ▷</td>
<td>Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, ▲)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Enter / Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>(Press and release)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH</td>
<td>Page search ◄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◄ ◄</td>
<td>Playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▼ ▼</td>
<td>Auto search (cue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▼ ▼</td>
<td>Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▼ ▼</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input (Default: Marantz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When the menu screen is displayed, press SEARCH, then press ◄ (previous page) or ▷ (next page).
To cancel, press △ ▽ or SEARCH.

Listening to Rhapsody

1 Prepare for playback.
   ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit’s power (page 24 “Connecting to a home network (LAN)”).
   ② If settings are required, make the “Network Connecting” (page 81).

2 Press AMP and then press SOURCE SEL to display the Source Select menu, then select ▼ (page 25). Then press NET/USB.

3 Use △ ▽ to select “Sign in to your account”, then press ENTER or ▷.

4 Input Username and Password.

5 After inputting the “Username” and “Password”, select “OK”, then press ENTER.
   If the “Username” and “Password” match, the top menu for Rhapsody is displayed.

   NOTE:  
   - The password should be no longer than 99 characters.
   - Press RETURN to cancel the input. When “Cancel input?” is displayed, select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

   Search from Rhapsody latest information

1 Use △ ▽ to select “Rhapsody Music Guide”, then press ENTER or ▷.

2 Press △ ▽ to select the information for track selection, then press ENTER or ▷.
   ▪ For character input, see page 65.

3 Repeat step 2 until the track is displayed.

4 Use △ ▽ to select the track, then press ENTER or ▷.

   Enter a character search for the track you want to listen to

1 Use △ ▽ to select “Search”, then press ENTER or ▷.

2 Use △ ▽ to select the search item, then press ENTER or ▷.
   The search display appears.
   ▪ You can search by artist name, album name, track name or keyword.

3 Enter the characters, then press ENTER.
1. Search from the Rhapsody internet radio station

1) Use \( \Delta \) \( \nabla \) to select “Rhapsody Channels”, then press \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{P} \).
   - Repeat step 1 until the radio station is displayed.

2) Use \( \Delta \) \( \nabla \) to select radio station, then press \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{P} \).
   - The search display appears.

2. Registering tracks in my library

1) Use \( \Delta \) \( \nabla \) to select “Add to my library”, then press \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{P} \).
   - The track is entered in the library.

3. Listening to tracks registered in my library

1) Use \( \Delta \) \( \nabla \) to select “My Library”, then press \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{P} \).
   - Repeat step 1 until the track is displayed.

2) Use \( \Delta \) \( \nabla \) to select the information or track, then press \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{P} \).
   - After selecting, the information is displayed

3. Rating function

1) Use \( \Delta \) \( \nabla \) to select “Rating”, then press \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{P} \).
2) Use \( \text{P} \) \( \text{D} \) to select the rating, then press \( \text{ENTER} \).

• To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in M-DAX mode (page 76).
• The default setting is “OFF”.

Track menu

Press \( \text{P} \) \( \text{D} \) during playback to display the track menu.
Selecting a listening mode (Surround mode)

This unit can play input audio signals in multi-channel surround mode or in stereo mode. Select a listening mode suitable for the playback contents (cinema, music, etc.) or according to your liking.

### Listening mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input audio signal</th>
<th>Playback</th>
<th>Listening mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-channel</td>
<td>Surround</td>
<td>Multi-channel playback (page 44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi channel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-channel</td>
<td>Stereo</td>
<td>Stereo playback (page 46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi channel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-channel</td>
<td>Stereo</td>
<td>Direct playback (page 46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi channel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-channel</td>
<td>Virtual Surround</td>
<td>Dolby Virtual Speaker/Dolby Headphone playback (page 46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi channel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For 2-channel signal input:
- Surround-channel signals are created and played with surround playback.
- The surround signal recorded in source is played as surround playback. (The sound is played according to the settings of the speaker size in “Speaker Config.” (page 78).)
- Surround-back-channel or front-height-channel signals that are not recorded in source can be created.
- Sound recorded in source is played as is.
- Surround back signals or front height signals are not created.
- In this mode, the following items cannot be adjusted.
  - Tone (page 73)
  - Dynamic EQ® (page 74)
  - Dynamic Volume® (page 75)
  - M-DAX (page 76)

Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see “Types of input signals, and corresponding surround modes” (page 106).

Adjust the sound field effect with the menu “Surround Parameter” (page 73) to enjoy your favorite sound mode.

You can select the listening mode by pressing SURROUND MODE on the main unit.

- AUTO*(STEREO) ➔ STEREO ➔ DOLBY PLIIz ➔ DOLBY PLIIx Movie ➔ DOLBY PLIIx Music ➔ DOLBY PLIIx Game ➔ DOLBY VS ➔ NEURAL ➔ MULTI CH STEREO ➔ DTS NEO:6 music ➔ DTS NEO:6 cinema ➔ STEREO

For “AUTO”, press AUTO on the amplifier or remote control unit.

### Multi-channel playback

1. Playing the source (page 26–42).

2. Press SURR. to select the surround decoder to play back multichannel sound.
   - If SURROUND MODE on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.
   - Each time SURR. is pressed, the surround mode is switched.
   - Which decoder can be selected depends on the settings of “Amp Assign” (page 78) or “Speaker Config.” (page 78).

- DOLBY PLIIz ➔ This mode is for 7.1-channel surround playback using the front height speakers.
- DOLBY PLIIx ➔ This mode is for 7.1-channel or 6.1-channel surround playback using the surround back speakers.
- DTS NEO:6 ➔ This mode is for 7.1-channel, 6.1-channel or 5.1-channel surround playback using the surround back speakers.
- DOLBY PLII ➔ This mode is for 5.1-channel surround playback.
- DTS NEO:6 ➔ This mode is for 7.1-channel, 6.1-channel or 5.1-channel surround playback using the surround back speakers.
- DOLBY PLII ➔ This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.
- DOLBY PLII ➔ This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.
- DOLBY PLII ➔ This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.
- DOLBY PLII ➔ This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.

Views on the display

1. Shows a decoder to be used.
2. Shows Audyssey DSX™ processing.

Surround playback of multi-channel sources (Dolby Digital, DTS etc.)

1. Playing the source (page 26 – 42).
2. Press SURR. to select the surround decoder to play back multi-channel sound.

- If SURROUND MODE on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.
- Select the surround mode while viewing the display on the screen (page 104). “Displaying the currently playing surround mode” at right.
- Which decoder can be selected depends on the input signal, the settings of “Amp Assign” (page 78) or “Speaker Config.” (page 78).

Displaying the currently playing surround mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input signal</th>
<th>Surround mode</th>
<th>Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch)</td>
<td>NEURAL</td>
<td>NEURAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL (other than 2ch) / DOLBY DIGITAL EX</td>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL</td>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL PLUS</td>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL PLUS</td>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL PLUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY TrueHD</td>
<td>DOLBY TrueHD</td>
<td>DOLBY TrueHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS ES MTRX6.1 / DTS ES MTRX6.1</td>
<td>DTS ES MTRX6.1</td>
<td>DTS ES MTRX6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD</td>
<td>DTS-HD</td>
<td>DTS-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCM (multi ch)</td>
<td>PCM (multi ch)</td>
<td>PCM (multi ch)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. This is displayed when the input signal is “DTS-ES Matrix 6.1”.
2. This is displayed when the input signal is “DTS-ES Discrete 6.1”.
3. This is displayed when the input signal is “DTS 96/24”.
4. This surround mode is displayed when all of your multi-channel signals are processed by Audyssey DSX.” (page 94) is set to “ON-High” or “ON-Wide”.

[Views on the display]

1. Shows a decoder to be used.
2. A DOLBY DIGITAL Plus decoder is displayed as “DOLBY D +”. Shows a decoder that creates sound output from the surround back speakers.

+ “PL.2” indicates the front height sound from front height speakers.

For an input signal that can be reproduced in each surround mode, see “Surround modes and parameters” (page 104).
**Stereo playback**
This is the mode for playing in stereo. The tone can be adjusted.
- Sound is output from the front left and right speakers and subwoofer.
- If multichannel signals are input, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played.

1. Playing the source (page 26 – 42).
2. Press STEREO. Stereo playback begins.

**Direct playback**
Sound recorded in source is played as is.
- Surround back signals or front height signals are not created.
- Tone (page 73) • MultEQ® XT (page 74)
- Dynamic EQ® (page 74) • Dynamic Volume® (page 75)
- M-DAX (page 76)

1. Playing the source (page 26 – 42).
2. Press P.DIRECT to select the direct mode.
   - If PURE DIRECT on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.
   - Each time P.DIRECT is pressed, the direct mode is switched.

**Dolby Virtual Speaker/Dolby Headphone playback**

- **Dolby Virtual Speaker mode**
  This delivers a full surround sound experience from two stereo speakers.
  - Sound is output from the front left and right speakers.
  - If multichannel signals are input, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio.

1. Playing the source (page 26 – 42).
2. Press SURR. to select “DOLBY VS”.

- **Dolby Headphone mode**
  You can enjoy listening to multi-channel surround sound through headphones using this mode.

  Press SURR. to select the Dolby Headphone mode.

- If SURROUND MODE on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.
- Each time SURR. is pressed, the Dolby Headphone mode is switched.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pure Direct</td>
<td>The surround mode returns to the previous setting as soon as the plug is removed from the jack. You can select Dolby HP PLII Movie or Dolby HP PLII Music when a 2-channel source is played back.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SOURCE DIRECT**
This mode plays back tracks at high sound quality without passing through the sound quality adjustment circuits.

**PURE DIRECT**
This mode plays back tracks at the closest to the original sound quality.

**AUTO**
This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.

* The following circuits that affect sound quality are set to off.
  - Main unit’s display circuit (The display is turned off.)
  - Analog video input/output circuit
Advanced version

Here, we explain functions and operations that let you make better use of this unit.

- Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection)  page 48
- Playback (Advanced operation)  page 55
- Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)  page 61
- How to make detailed settings  page 63
- Operating the connected devices by remote control unit  page 90
Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection)

This section provides the installation, connection, and setup methods of speaker systems other than the 7.1-channel system (with surround back speakers).

For the speaker installation, connection, and setup methods of the 7.1-channel system with surround back speakers, see “Simple version (Simple setup guide)” (page 4).

Use Audyssey® Auto Setup function of this unit to automatically detect the number of connected speakers and perform optimal settings for the speakers to be used.

Procedure for speaker settings

| Install | Connect (page 49) | Set up speakers (page 52) |

**Install**

This unit is compatible with Audyssey DSX™ (page 109) and Dolby Pro Logic IIz (page 110), which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation. When using Audyssey DSX, install front wide speakers or front height speakers. When using Dolby Pro Logic IIz, install front height speakers.

Install the surround back speakers in a position 2 to 3 ft (60 to 90 cm) higher than ear level.

- Front height speaker • Point slightly downwards
  - At least 3.3 ft / 1 m

- Front wide speaker • Point slightly downwards
  - 2 – 3 ft / 60 – 90 cm

- Surround back speaker • Point slightly downwards

**NOTE**

Sound is not output simultaneously from the surround back speakers, front height speakers, and front wide speakers. You can switch between speakers by changing the settings in surround mode or Audyssey DSX.

**When 7.1ch (Surround back / Front height / Front wide speaker) installed**

- FHR
- FHL
- FL
- FR
- FWL
- FWR
- SW
- C
- SBL
- SBR

**Listening position**

- 1 22˚ – 30˚
- 2 22˚ – 45˚
- 3 55˚ – 60˚
- 4 90˚ – 110˚
- 5 135˚ – 150˚

**When 6.1ch (Surround back speaker) installed**

- FL
- SW
- FR
- SR
- SB

**Listening position**

- 1 22˚ – 30˚
- 2 90˚ – 110˚
**Connect**

- For the method of connecting the 7.1-channel system with surround back speakers, see page 5.
- For the method of connecting the TV, see page 7.

**Example of connections to Marantz MM7055 and MM7025 power amp**

**7.1-channel (Surround back / Front height / Front wide speaker) connection**

For 7.1-channel (Surround back / Front height / Front wide speaker) playback, set “Set up “Amp Assign” (page 52) to “Normal”.

**Install**

**When 5.1ch installed**
- FL: Front speaker (L)
- FR: Front speaker (R)
- C: Center speaker
- SW: Subwoofer
- SL: Surround speaker (L)
- SR: Surround speaker (R)
- SB: Surround back speaker
- SBL: Surround back speaker (L)
- SBR: Surround back speaker (R)
- FHL: Front height speaker (L)
- FHR: Front height speaker (R)
- FWL: Front wide speaker (L)
- FWR: Front wide speaker (R)

**Listening position**
- 1: 22˚ – 30˚
- 2: 120˚

**When Front A/B speakers installed**

**Connect**

- For speaker impedance and speaker cable connections, see power amp user guide.
6.1-channel (Surround back speaker) connection

If you are using just one surround back speaker, connect it to the UNBALANCED or BALANCED PRE OUT SBL terminals on the power amp.

For speaker settings in this case, see "When 6.1ch (Surround back speaker) installed" (page 48).

For 6.1-channel (Surround back speaker) playback, set “Set up “Amp Assign”” (page 52) to “Normal”.

5.1-channel connection

For 5.1-channel playback, set “Set up “Amp Assign”” (page 52) to “Normal”.

For speaker impedance and speaker cable connections, see power amp user guide.
Front A/B connection
A second set of front speakers can be connected to the UNBALANCED PRE OUT HL/HR terminals on the power amp. In this case, perform the settings using the SPKR A/B button on the remote control or main unit (page 26 "Set the front speakers to be used").

2.1-channel connection

Bi-Amp connection
A bi-amp connection is to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminals and woofer terminals of speakers compatible with the bi-amp function. This prevents the back electromotive force (returned force without output) of the woofer sent to the tweeter, which affects the sound quality of the tweeter, and you can enjoy playback with higher-quality sound. In this case, set “Set up “Amp Assign” (page 52) to “SPKR-C”.

For connecting four subwoofers
Four subwoofers can be connected to this unit. The same signal is output from each subwoofer terminal.

When a Bi-Amp connection is used, the same signal is output from the UNBALANCED and BALANCED PRE OUT FL/FR and SBL/SBR terminals. For surround playback of a multichannel source, if you connect the center speaker, surround speakers and subwoofers, 5.1-channel playback is available.

NOTE
- Use speakers compatible with bi-amp connections.
- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker’s woofer and tweeter terminals.

For speaker impedance and speaker cable connections, see power amp user guide.
Set up speakers

This section provides the setup methods of speaker systems other than the 7.1-channel system (with surround back speakers). For the setup methods of the 7.1-channel system with surround back speakers, see “Simple version”, “Set up speakers (Audyssey® Auto Setup)” (page 8) of “Simple version”.

First install and connect the speakers to this unit.

Before Auto Setup measurement, the settings shown below can be made.

- Changing the amplifier assignment (Amp Assign)
  The signal output from the UNBALANCED and BALANCED PRE OUT SBL/SBR terminals of this unit can be switched to match your speaker environment. See page 52 “Set up “Amp Assign”.”

- Setting the channels to be used (Channel Select)
  If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. See page 52 “Set up “Channel Select”.”

Audio output from each PRE OUT terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRE OUT Channel</th>
<th>UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal</th>
<th>BALANCED PRE OUT terminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FL/FR C SW1/SW2 SL/SR SBL/SBR HL/HR WL/WR</td>
<td>FL/FR C SW1/SW2 SL/SR SBL/SBR --- ---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Output</td>
<td>Front A Center Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2 Surround Surround Back*</td>
<td>Front Height / Front B Front Wide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The output audio differs depending on the “Amp Assign” settings.

1. Set up the remote control unit

   - Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.

2. Connect the setup microphone.

   When the setup microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.

   - Audyssey Auto Setup
   - Auto Setup
   - Auto Setup
   - Auto Setup
   - Auto Setup
   - Auto Setup
   - Auto Setup

3. Set up “Amp Assign”

   Use \( \uparrow \downarrow \) to select “Amp Assign”, and then press ENTER.

   - Normal: Set when using surround back, front height or front wide speakers. In this case, go to step 5.
   - ZONE2: Set for connecting the speakers for ZONE2.
   - ZONE3: Set for connecting the speakers for ZONE3.
   - SPKR-C: Set for connecting the tweeter of the front speaker to the UNBALANCED and BALANCED PRE OUT SBL/SBR terminals of the power amp, and the woofer of the front speaker to the FL/FR terminals.

4. Use \( \leftarrow \rightarrow \) to select the configuration of the connected speakers, and then press RETURN.

   - Normal: Set when using surround back, front height or front wide speakers. In this case, go to step 5.
   - ZONE2: Set for connecting the speakers for ZONE2.
   - ZONE3: Set for connecting the speakers for ZONE3.
   - SPKR-C: Set for connecting the tweeter of the front speaker to the UNBALANCED and BALANCED PRE OUT SBL/SBR terminals of the power amp, and the woofer of the front speaker to the FL/FR terminals.

5. Set up “Channel Select”

   Use \( \uparrow \downarrow \) to select “Channel Select”, and then press ENTER.

   - Subwoofer: Select for no subwoofers to be used. In this case, go to step 7.
   - Surround Back: Select for no surround back speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 8.
   - Front Height: Select for no front height speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 9.
   - Front Wide: Select for no front wide speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 9.

6. Use \( \uparrow \downarrow \) to select a channel.

   - Measure: Set for measuring a subwoofer.
   - Skip: Set for no measuring of a subwoofer.

7. When “Subwoofer” is selected in step 6:

   Use \( \leftarrow \rightarrow \) to select the item.

   - Measure: Set for measuring a subwoofer.
   - Skip: Set for no measuring of a subwoofer.
### Connections (Advanced connection)

#### REMOTE CONTROL jacks

When you use this unit connected to Marantz audio components, it sends operation signals to operate each component.

**Connection**

Use the remote connection cable (supplied with a Marantz audio component you want to connect) to connect the REMOTE CONTROL OUT terminal of this unit to the REMOTE CONTROL IN terminal of the component to be connected.

**Setting**

Set the remote control switch located on the rear panel of the connected audio component to “EXTERNAL” or “EXT.” to use this feature.

- This setting will disable remote sensor reception of the connected audio component.
- To operate the connected audio component, point the remote control at the remote sensor of this unit.

Wireless receiver RX101 (ref. page 23)

#### Remote control operation buttons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Confirm the setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return to previous menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### NOTE

After performing Audyssey® Auto Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey Auto Setup again.

---

**Set up speakers**

8. [When “Surround Back” is selected in step 6]
   - Measure (2spkrs): Set for measuring two surround back speakers.
   - Measure (1spkr): Set for measuring a surround back speaker.
   - Skip: Set for no measuring of a surround back speaker.

9. [When “Front Height” or “Front Wide” is selected in step 6]
   - Measure: Set to measure the front height speakers or front wide speakers.
   - Skip: Set when you do not want to measure the front height speakers or front wide speakers.

**RS-232C connector**

When you connect an external control device, you can control this unit with the external control device.

Perform the operation below beforehand.
1. Turn on the power of this unit.
2. Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
3. Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

**DC OUT (TRIGGER OUT) jacks**

When a device with DC IN jack is connected, the connected device’s power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit. The DC OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V/150 mA electrical signal.

Set to change the conditions for linked operation via the DC OUT 1 or 2 jack.

"Trigger Out 1" or "Trigger Out 2" (page 85)

**NOTE**

If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12V/150 mA, or has shorted, the DC OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.
Convenient functions

HDMI control function

When you make an HDMI connection with a TV or player compatible with this unit and HDMI control functions, you can perform the following operations by setting the HDMI control function of each device.

- This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.
- You can switch audio output devices with a TV operation.
  When you set “Output audio from amp” in the TV audio output setup operation, you can switch the amp power on.
- You can adjust this unit volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.
- You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.
- When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.

NOTE

- The HDMI control function only supports the HDMI OUT 1 connector. To use the HDMI control function, connect the television to the HDMI OUT 1 connector.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “ON”, it consumes more standby power.
- The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control.
- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the user guide of each device for details beforehand.
- When “Power Off Control” on the menu is set to “OFF” (page 81), this unit is not set to standby even if the connected device is in the standby mode.
- When connection changes are implemented, such as adding connections to HDMI devices, linked operations may be initialized. In this case, you will need to reconfigure the settings.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “ON”, it is not possible to assign an HDMI connector to “TV” at “Input Assign” (page 69).

1 Set the HDMI output connector corresponding with the HDMI control function. Set “HDMI Control” (page 80) to “ON”.
2 Turn the power on for all the equipment connected by HDMI cable.
3 Set the HDMI control function for all equipment connected by HDMI cable.
   • Please consult the operating instructions for the connected equipment to check the settings.
   • Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the equipment be unplugged.
4 Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.
5 Switch this unit input to the HDMI input source and check if the picture from the player is ok.
6 When you turn the TV’s power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.

If the HDMI control function does not operate properly, check the following points.
- Is the TV or player compatible with the HDMI control function?
- Is “HDMI Control” (page 80) set to “ON”?
- Is “Power Off Control” (page 81) set to “All” or “Video”?
- Are the HDMI control function settings of all equipment correct?
- Is the television connected to the HDMI OUT 1 connector?

NOTE

Should any of the operations below be performed, the interlocking function may be reset, in which case, repeat steps 2 and 3.
- “Input Assign” – “HDMI” (page 69) setting has changed.
- “Monitor Out” (page 80) setting is changed.
- There is a change to the connection between the equipment and the HDMI, or an increase in equipment.
Convenient functions

Sleep timer function
The power automatically goes into standby once the set time has elapsed. This is convenient for playing sources while going to sleep.

1 Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.

2 Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.
   The SLEEP indicator on the display lights.
   • If SLEEP on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.

   • The time switches as shown below each time SLEEP is pressed.
     OFF 10 min 20 30 40 50 60 80 70 90 100 110

To cancel the sleep timer
Press SLEEP to set “OFF”.
   The SLEEP indicator on the display turns off.
   • The sleep timer setting is canceled if this unit’s power is set to standby or turned off.
   • When power to the main zone is turned off with the sleep timer, power in ZONE2 and ZONE3 are also turned off.

Adjusting the volume of the speakers
You can adjust the channel level either according to the playback sources or to suit your taste, as described below.

Adjusting the volume of the different speakers

1 Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.

2 Press CH LVL.

3 Use △▽ to select the speaker.
   The speaker that can be set switches each time one of the buttons is pressed.

4 Use ◀▶ to adjust the volume.
   • In the case of a subwoofer, pressing ◀ when it is at “–12 dB” will change the setting to “OFF”.

   • When a headphone jack is inserted, the headphone channel level can be adjusted.
   • When the input mode setting is “7.1CH IN”, you can adjust the channel level while the 7.1CH INPUT connector is being used. In that case, “7.1CH IN Level” appears at the top of the screen.

   • The fader function does not affect the subwoofer.
   • The fader can be adjusted until the volume of the speaker is adjusted to the lowest value of –12 dB.
Operating a wireless LAN-compatible mobile terminal to play music and still pictures

- Perform this procedure using a wireless LAN-compatible mobile terminal conforming to the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance) standard.
- This function allows you to play content located on a computer (media server) or mobile terminal device connected on a network by operating a mobile terminal device on the same network.
- There are two types of operations on the mobile terminal device.

Playing content on a computer (Media server)

1. From the mobile terminal device, browse the media server on the same network and choose the content you want to play.
2. From the mobile terminal device, select this unit from among the products on the network. Playback of the content selected in step 1 begins.

• When selecting this unit from the mobile terminal device, the name of this unit is displayed at “Friendly Name” (page 82 “Friendly Name Edit”).
• The following operations are possible from the mobile terminal device:
  - File operations (play, stop, pause, track search)
  - Volume adjustment

Playing contents on a mobile terminal device

1. Select the content you want to play from among the mobile terminal devices.
2. From the mobile terminal device, select this unit from among the products on the network. Playback of the content selected in step 1 begins.

• When selecting this unit from the mobile terminal device, the name of this unit is displayed at “Friendly Name” (page 82 “Friendly Name Edit”).
• The following operations are possible from the mobile terminal device:
  - File operations (play, stop, pause, track search)
  - Volume adjustment

• is displayed on the menu screen while the mobile terminal device is being operated.
• For the various settings and operating procedures, see the operating instructions of the mobile terminal devices being used.
• When selecting this unit from the mobile terminal device, the name of this unit is displayed at “Friendly Name”. “Friendly Name” can be edited at “Friendly Name Edit” (page 82) as desired so that it is easily distinguishable from other devices.
• When playback is started from the mobile terminal device, this unit’s input source automatically switches to “NET/USB”. Also, when the “Network Standby” setting (page 82) is set to “ON”, the power automatically turns on.

NOTE
When operations related to browsing or playback (play, stop, pause, track search) are performed on this unit while operating the mobile terminal device, the connection to the network is disconnected.
Web control function

You can operate this unit using a browser.

1. Switch the “Network Standby” setting to “ON”. ([page 82])
2. Check the IP address of this unit with “Network Information” ([page 83]).
3. Enter the IP address of this unit in browser’s address box.
   For example, if the IP address of this unit is “192.168.100.19”, enter “http://192.168.100.19”.
4. When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.
5. Operate.

   [Example 1] Main zone control screen
   [Example 2] Setup menu
   [Example 3] Network control setting
   [Example 4] PDA menu
   [Example 5] Individual operation

Convenient functions

1. Entering the IP address.
2. Checking the IP address.
3. Click when you operate each zone.
4. Click when you operate the setup menu.
5. Click to change the Web control screen setting.
6. Click to perform individual operations.
7. Click when you update to the latest information.
8. Displayed when setting “Top Menu Link Setup” to “ON” in "Main Menu Control/Cabinet Display Setup".
9. Click to add a setting to “Favorites” in your browser.
   We recommend registering the setting screens for the different zones in the browser’s favorites so as not to accidentally perform menu operations for zones you do not intend to operate.
1. Click the menu item from which you want to make settings. The display on the right becomes the individual setting screens.
2. Click “SAVE” when you want to save settings, and click “LOAD” when you want to call settings.
3. Click an item to make a setting.
4. After entering characters, click “Set” to set, or click “Def” to return to default setting.
5. Enter figures or click “<” or “>” to make the setting, and then click “Set”.

**Example 2** Setup menu screen

**Example 3** Web configuration screen

**Example 4** PDA menu screen

**Example 5** Net Audio operating screen

**Example 6** Dedicated iPod Touch screen

---

**NOTE**
You cannot change setup menu operations and zone name on the PDA menu screen.

- Select this item to operate each zone.
- Click the menu items from which you want to play.
- Click “v” to select the preset channel you want to play.
- When registering presets, click “v” to select the channel you want to register, and then click “MEMORY”.
- When searching using an acronym, click “v” and select from the displayed characters.
- Click this item to play back repeatedly.
- Click this item when selecting menu items.
- Click to stop playback.
- Click this item to play back randomly.
**Convenient functions**

**Panel lock function**
To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.

- **Disabling all key button operations**
  - ON/STANDBY

  Press **ON/STANDBY** while you press and hold **AUTO** and **DISPLAY** with the unit in standby mode. “Panel Lock:ON” appears on the display and all button operations except **ON/STANDBY** are disabled.

- **Disabling all button operations except VOLUME**
  - ON/STANDBY

  Press **ON/STANDBY** while you press and hold **PURE DIRECT** and **DISPLAY** with the unit in standby mode. “Panel Lock:ON” appears on the display and all button operations except **ON/STANDBY** and **VOLUME** are disabled.

**Canceling the Panel lock function**

- ON/STANDBY

Press **ON/STANDBY** while you press and hold **i** and **DISPLAY** with the unit in standby mode. The Panel lock function is canceled.

Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.

**Various memory functions**

- **Personal memory plus function**
  - This function sets the settings (input mode, surround mode, HDMI output mode, MultEQ® XT, Dynamic EQ®, Dynamic Volume®, audio delay etc.) last selected for the individual input sources.

  The surround parameters, tone settings and the volumes of the different speakers are stored for the individual surround modes.

- **Last function memory**
  - This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.

  When the power is turned back on, the settings are restored.
Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)

- You can operate this unit so as to enjoy audio in a room (ZONE2, ZONE3) other than the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located).
- You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

Audio output

There are two methods to do this, as described below. Choose one of the methods.
① Zone playback by audio output (UNBALANCED and BALANCED)
② Zone playback by audio output (PRE OUT)
   Use an external amplifier.

① Zone playback by audio output (UNBALANCED and BALANCED)

Using the amplifier assign function, zone 2 and zone 3 auto signals are output from this unit’s UNBALANCED and BALANCED PRE OUT SBL/SBR terminals.

Audio connections (ZONE2, ZONE3)

The audio signals of this unit’s ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output terminals are output to the ZONE2 and ZONE3 amplifiers and played on these amplifiers.

We recommend using high quality pin-plug cables for audio connections in order to prevent noise.

NOTE
- When the input source to which the digital input connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) are assigned is selected in ZONE2 or ZONE3, playback is only possible if the digital signal being input is in PCM (2-channel) format.
- It is not possible to play the digital audio signals input from the HDMI terminals in ZONE2 and ZONE3. Use analog connections for ZONE2 or ZONE3 playback.
- When certain digital signals are being input, noise may be output from the ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output connectors.
- The menu screen is not output.
**Video output**

**Video Connection**

The video signals of this unit’s ZONE2 video output terminal are played by the ZONE2 TV.

![Diagram](image)

**NOTE**

- It is not possible to output video signals input to the HDMI terminals to ZONE2.
- When using component output terminal 2 for ZONE2 video signal output, set “Manual Setup” – “Option Setup” – “Component2 Output” (page 85) in the menu to “ZONE2”.
- The menu screen is not output.

**Playback**

1. **Press Z2 or Z3 to switch the remote control operating mode.**
   The remote control unit switches to the operating mode for ZONE2 or ZONE3.

2. **Press ON to turn on the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power.**
   The ZONE2 or ZONE3 indicator on the display lights.
   - When STANDBY is pressed, ZONE2 or ZONE3 turns off.
   - Power in ZONE2 or ZONE3 can be turned on or off by pressing SOURCE ON/OFF.
   - Power in ZONE2 or ZONE3 can be turned on or off by pressing ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF on the main unit.

3. **Press INPUT ▲▼.**
   The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2 or ZONE3.
   - Turn INPUT SELECTOR after pressing ZONE SELECT on the main unit to select an input source.

**Adjusting the volume.**

Use VOLUME to adjust the volume.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjustable range</th>
<th>-∞ - 80dB - 0dB - 10dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*When the “Volume Display” (page 84) setting is “Relative”*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjustable range</th>
<th>0 - 41 - 99</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*When the “Volume Display” (page 84) setting is “Absolute”*

- At time of purchase, “Volume Limit” (page 83) is set to “−10dB (71)”.

Turn VOLUME after pressing ZONE SELECT on the main unit to adjust the sound volume.

**Turning off the sound temporarily**

Press MUTE.

The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” (page 84) in the menu.
- To cancel, either adjust the volume or press MUTE again.
- The setting is canceled when the zone’s power is turned off.

You can adjust the tone and volume for ZONE2 and ZONE3 in “Zone Setup” (page 83) in the menu.

When power for both MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 is set to ON, power of the MAIN ZONE only can be turned off. Select “AMP” in step 1 then press STANDBY.
How to make detailed settings

Menu map

For menu operation, connect a TV to this unit and display the menu on the TV screen. For menu operations, see the following page.

Items that only need to be set once

Set these for example upon purchase. Once these items are set, there is no need to set them again unless the speaker layout or the connected speakers have been changed.

Displayed items of the “Input Setup” menu differs, depending on the selected input source.
### Examples of menu and front display

Below we describe typical examples of displays on the TV screen and on the set’s display window.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu display</th>
<th>Front display</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Top menu display</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![Menu Display](image1) | ![Front Display](image2) | 1. The menu items are displayed here.  
2. The selected line is displayed here.  
3. The currently selected item is displayed on the display.  
   Use △ ‿ to move to the item you want to set. |
| **Display when changing settings.** | | |
| ![Input Setup Display](image3) | ![Display when Changing Settings](image4) | 1. Use △ ‿ ‿ to move to the item you want to set.  
2. Press ENTER to set to the mode in which the setting can be made. |
| **Display when inputting characters.** | | |
| ![Input Setup Display](image5) | ![Display when Inputting Characters](image6) | 1. When ‿ ‿ is pressed, the cursor moves to the left or right.  
   2. When △ ‿ is pressed at the position where you want to input the character, the character is input.  
   For inputting characters on a keyboard screen or with the number buttons on the remote control unit, see page 65. |
| **Display when resetting.** | | |
| ![Input Setup Display](image7) | ![Display when Resetting](image8) | 1. Press ‿ to select “Default”, then press ENTER to set.  
2. Press ‿ to select “Yes”, then press ENTER. |
Inputting characters

You can change the names as desired using the “Preset Name” (page 68), “Rename” (page 71), “Rhapsody Account” (page 83), “Napster Account” (page 83), “Zone Rename” (page 85) and character input for the network functions.

For inputting characters, there are three methods, as shown below.

Method for inputting characters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using the cursor buttons (Normal screen)</td>
<td>• Operating with the remote control unit or the main unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use △ ▶ to set the cursor to the character you want to change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the keyboard screen</td>
<td>• Operating with the remote control unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select a character on the TV screen to input characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Normal screen

Display of a normal input screen

[Account input / Search by text / Proxy Name / Friendly Name Edit]

Using the cursor buttons

1. Display the screen for inputting characters (page 63 “Menu map”).
2. Use ◀ ▶ to set the cursor to the character you want to change.
3. Use △ ▽ to change the character, then press ENTER.
   • The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

   [Upper case characters] ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
   [Lower case characters] abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
   [Symbols] ! $ % & ( ) * + , . / : < > ? @ [ \ ] ^ `_ `{ |
   [Numbers] 0123456789 (Space)

   • The input character type can be switched by pressing SHIFT/TOP MENU while the display name is being changed.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to change the name then press ENTER to register it.
**Inputting characters**

**1** Display the screen for inputting characters (page 63 “Menu map”).

**2** Press SEARCH/INFO while a normal screen is displayed. A keyboard screen is displayed.

**3** Select a character to be changed.

   ① Press Δ ▽ ◄ to select or ►

   ② Press ENTER to place the cursor at the character to be changed. Each time ENTER is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.

**4** Select a character to be input with Δ ▽ ◄ then press ENTER.

   - The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

   **Upper case characters/Numbers/Symbols**
   ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
   0123456789
   ! " # $ % & ' ( ) + , . / ; < = > ? [ ] ^ _ \ { } ~

   **Lower case characters/Numbers/Symbols**
   abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
   0123456789
   : ; , . _ / \ : \ ~ \ ‘ \ { \ |

   - The input character type can be switched by pressing SHIFT/TOP MENU while the display name is being changed.

**5** Repeat steps 3 and 4 to change the name.

**6** Use Δ ▽ ◄ to select OK, then press ENTER.

---

**Input Setup**

Perform settings related to input source playback.

- You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

**Menu operation.**

**1** Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.

**2** Press MENU. The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

**3** Use Δ ▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.

**4** Press ENTER or ► to enter the setting.

   - To return to the previous item, press RETURN.

   - Exiting the Menu, press MENU while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

---

**Important information**

- **About the display of input sources**

In this section, the configurable input sources for each item are shown as follows.

   **Input sources**
   BD DVD VCR SAT GAME AUX1 NET/USB TV CD CDR PHONO SIRIUS HD Radio M-XPort

**NOTE**

Input sources that have been set to “Delete” at “Source Delete” (page 84) cannot be selected.
### Items that can be set with the Input Setup procedure

#### Auto Preset (page 57)
- **Start**
  - Press \( \triangle \) to select “Auto Preset”, then press \( \triangleright \) or \( \triangleright \).
  - Enter your password (4 digits number) and press \( \triangleright \).

#### Preset Skip (page 67)
- **A – G**
  - Select the preset to skip by pressing \( \triangle \) and \( \triangleright \) to select “Preset Skip”.
  - Press \( \triangleright \) to display the selected preset channel.
  - \( \triangleright \) : Display the selected preset channel.
  - \( \triangleright \) : Do not display the selected preset channel.

#### Parental Lock (page 57)
- **Lock Setting**
  - Select channel by pressing \( \triangle \), and set the lock by pressing \( \triangleright \).
  - \( \triangleright \) : Lock selected channel(s). When a Parental Locked channel is tuned, “Enter Lock Code” is displayed, then input the password.
  - \( \triangleright \) : Do not lock selected channel(s).

### Auto Preset

Use the auto preset function to program radio stations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start the auto preset process.</strong></td>
<td>If an FM station cannot be preset automatically, select the desired station by tuning it manually, then preset it manually.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Preset Skip

Set preset channel to be skipped when selecting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting items</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A – G</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Set the preset channels you do not want to display.</strong></td>
<td>You can set by preset memory block (A to G) or by preset channel (1 to 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ON</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display the selected preset channel.</strong></td>
<td>If you set “Block Presets” to “Skip”, you can skip the preset memory blocks (A to G).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Skip</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do not display the selected preset channel.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Parental Lock

For any channel, set the radio reception limits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lock Setting</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Set the channel radio reception limits.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ON</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>If the password is wrong, “Lock Code is incorrect” is displayed. Input the correct password.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unlock</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do not lock selected channel(s).</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The default password is “0000”.*
Input Setup

### Setting items
- **Edit Lock Code**
  - Change the password.
  - **SIRIUS**

  1. Press \( \Delta \) to select “Edit Lock Code”, and then press \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) to enter.
  2. Input current lock code (4 digits) using \( \Delta \) \( \downarrow \) \( \uparrow \), and press \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) to enter.
  3. Input new lock code (4 digits) again using \( \Delta \) \( \downarrow \) \( \uparrow \), and press \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) to enter.
  4. Press \( \Delta \) to select “Execute”, and then press \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) to enter.

   - If the correct password is input, “Completed” is displayed, and the new password is modified.
   - If the old password is incorrectly input, “Current Lock Code is incorrect” is displayed, and proceed again from step 1.
   - If the password input is 3 digits or less, “Enter 4 digits number” is displayed, and input again with a 4 digit password.
   - If the new password is not correctly input, “New Lock Codes do not Match” is displayed and the password does not change.

### Input Assign

#### Examples of input assign menu screen displays.

#### Input assignments menu operations

1. Use \( \Delta \) \( \downarrow \) \( \uparrow \) to move the highlight to the item you want to set.
2. Press \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) to select the input connector to be assigned.
3. Press \( \downarrow \) to register the setting.

#### NOTE

- If all “HDMI”, “Digital” and “Component” assignment of the Game source are set to “None”, Game source cannot be selected with the input source selection.

### Antenna Aiming

Install the antenna with radio reception sensitivity set to maximum.

#### Setting items
- **Satellite**
  - Indicate satellite signal strength.
  - **SIRIUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■■■■</td>
<td>Signal strength is excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■■■</td>
<td>Signal strength is good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■■</td>
<td>Signal strength is weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No signal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Terrestrial**
  - Indicate terrestrial signal strength.
  - **SIRIUS**

### Preset Name

Assign name to a preset memory.

#### Setting items
- **A1 – G8**
  - Select the preset channel.
  - **HD Radio**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Do not reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Remote control operation buttons
- Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
- Confirm the setting
- Return to previous menu
### Input Setup

#### Setting items

**HDMI**
- Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>BD</th>
<th>DVD</th>
<th>VCR</th>
<th>SAT</th>
<th>GAME</th>
<th>AUX1</th>
<th>TV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default setting</td>
<td>HDMI 1</td>
<td>HDMI 2</td>
<td>HDMI 3</td>
<td>HDMI 4</td>
<td>HDMI 5</td>
<td>HDMI 6</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  - None: Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.
  - At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

**Digital**
- Set this to change the digital input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>BD</th>
<th>DVD</th>
<th>VCR</th>
<th>SAT</th>
<th>GAME</th>
<th>AUX1</th>
<th>TV</th>
<th>CD</th>
<th>CDR</th>
<th>SIRIUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default setting</td>
<td>Coax 1</td>
<td>Coax 2</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Opt 1</td>
<td>Opt 2</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Opt 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input source</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>CD</td>
<td>CDR</td>
<td>SIRIUS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default setting</td>
<td>Opt 1</td>
<td>Opt 2</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Coax1 – 2 (COAXIAL) / Opt1 – 3 (OPTICAL)
  - None: Do not assign a digital input connector to the selected input source.
  - At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

**Component**
- Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input source</th>
<th>BD</th>
<th>DVD</th>
<th>VCR</th>
<th>SAT</th>
<th>GAME</th>
<th>AUX1</th>
<th>TV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default setting</td>
<td>1-RCA</td>
<td>2-RCA</td>
<td>3-RCA</td>
<td>4-RCA</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Component / 1-RCA / 2-RCA / 3-RCA / 4-RCA (Component video)
  - None: Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.
  - At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

#### Setting details

**Video**
- Set the source video.
  - "GAME" or "TV" can be set when "HDMI" (v page 69) or "Component" (v page 69) has been assigned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Component</strong></td>
<td>1-RCA / 2-RCA / 3-RCA / 4-RCA (Component video)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source</strong></td>
<td>Play the picture and sound of the input source.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **V.SEL** on the remote control unit.
- "GAME" and "TV" can be selected only when a component video is assigned as an input source.

**Remote control operation buttons**
- Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
- Confirm the setting
- Return to previous menu
### Input Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Mode</strong></td>
<td>Make settings for video processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movie</td>
<td>Process video normally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game</td>
<td>Always process video appropriate for game content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Convert</strong></td>
<td>The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV (page 14 “Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)”).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>The input video signal is converted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>The input video signal is not converted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>i/p Scaler</strong></td>
<td>Convert the input source’s resolution to the resolution set at “Resolution”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>Use i/p scaler function for analog video signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analog &amp; HDMI</td>
<td>Use i/p scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>Use i/p scaler function for HDMI video signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Do not use i/p scaler function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NET/USB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resolution</strong></td>
<td>Set the output resolution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>The number of pixels the TV connected to the HDMI output connector supports is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NET/USB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive Mode</strong></td>
<td>Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NET/USB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aspect</strong></td>
<td>Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Output at 16:9 aspect ratio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Output at 4:3 aspect ratio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NET/USB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* “GAME” or “TV” can be set when “HDMI” (page 69) or “Component” (page 69) has been assigned.

---

Remote control operation buttons

- Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
- ENTER: Confirm the setting
- RETURN: Return to previous menu
Input Mode

The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Input Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Auto**: Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
- **HDMI**: Play only signals from HDMI input.
- **Digital**: Play only signals from digital input.
- **Analog**: Play only signals from analog input.
- **7.1CH IN**: Only signals input from the 7.1CH INPUT terminal will be played back.

- This can also be set by pressing A/D on the remote control unit.
- Each time A/D is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

```
Auto  HDMI  Digital  Analog  7.1CH IN
```

- "HDMI" can be set for input sources for which "HDMI" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 69).
- "Digital" can be set for input sources for which "Digital" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 69).
- If the input source is set to "TV" or "Game", it cannot be set to "Analog".
- When digital signals are properly input, the [ ] indicator lights on the display. If the [ ] indicator does not light, check the digital input connector assignment and the connections.
- The surround mode cannot be set if the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".
- If "HDMI Control" is set to "ON" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI OUT connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV" is fixed to ARC.

Decode Mode

Set the decode mode for input source.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Auto**: Detect type of digital input signal and decode and play automatically.
- **PCM**: Decode and play only PCM input signals.
- **DTS**: Decode and play only DTS input signals.

- This item can be set for input sources for which "HDMI" or "Digital" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 68).
- Normally set this mode to "Auto". Set "PCM" and "DTS" when inputting the corresponding input signal.

Rename

Change the display name of the selected input source.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rename</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Up to eight characters can be input.
- For character input, see page 65.

Default

The input source name is returned to the default setting.

- Yes: Reset to the defaults.
- No: Do not reset to the defaults.

Source Level

Default settings are underlined.

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source’s audio input.
- Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The analog input level and digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "HDMI" or "Digital" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 68).

Playback Mode

Make settings for repeat playback mode or random playback mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repeat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- All: All files are played repeatedly.
- One: A file being played is played repeatedly.
- OFF: Repeat playback mode is canceled.
- ON: Enable random playback.
- OFF: Disable random playback.

Remote control operation buttons

- Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
- Confirm the setting
- Return to previous menu
ENGLISH

Audio/Video Adjust

The sound being played in the surround mode can be adjusted to your liking. The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set surround mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see “Surround modes and parameters” (page 104).

Menu operation

1 Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.

2 Press MENU. The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 Use △ ▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.

4 Press ENTER or ➤ to enter the setting.

• To return to the previous item, press RETURN.
• Exiting the Menu, press MENU while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

Items that can be set with the Audio/Video Adjust procedure

Audio Adjust (page 73)
- Surround Parameter (page 73)
- Tone (page 73)
- Audyssey Settings (page 74)
- A-DSX Soundstage (page 75)
- Manual EQ (page 76)
- M-DAX (page 76)
- Audio Delay (page 76)

Picture Adjust (page 77)

Remote control operation buttons

Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)

ENTER Confirm the setting

RETURN Return to previous menu

Still Picture

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still Picture

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>Make slide show settings. ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : Display only the selected still picture image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Set the playback time per image. NET/USB 5sec – 60sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Audio Adjust

Surround Parameter  
Default settings are underlined.
Adjust surround sound parameters. It may not be possible to set this item depending on the input signal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| HT-EQ         | ON: “HT-EQ” is used.  
OFF: “HT-EQ” is not used. |
| DRC           | Auto: Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source. This can be set in the Dolby TrueHd mode.  
Low / Mid / High: These set the compression level.  
OFF: Dynamic range compression always off. |
| D.Comp        | Low / Mid / High: These set the compression level.  
OFF: Turn dynamic range compression off. |
| LFE           | –10dB – 0dB  
For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.  
• Dolby Digital sources: “0dB”  
• DTS movie sources: “0dB”  
• DTS music sources: “–10dB” |
| C.Image       | 0.0 – 1.0 (0.3) |
| Panorama      | ON: Set.  
OFF: Do not set. |
| Dimension     | 0 – 6 (3) |
| C.Width       | 0 – 7 (3) |

Height Gain
Control the front height channel volume.
Low: Reduce the front height channel volume.  
Mid: Front height channel sound is output with standard sound volume.  
High: Increase the front height channel volume.  

NOTE
“Height Gain” is displayed for the following settings.  
• When “Amp Assign” (page 78) is set to “Normal”.  
• When the “Speaker Config.” – “F.Height” setting (page 78) is set other than to “None”.  
• When surround mode is “PLIIz” or the PLIIz decoder is used.

Default
The “Surround Parameter” settings are returned to the default settings.
Yes: Reset to the defaults.  
No: Do not reset to the defaults.

Tone
Adjust the tonal quality of the sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tone Control  | ON: Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).  
OFF: Playback without tone adjustment.  
“Tone Control” can be set when “Dynamic EQ” (page 74) is set to “OFF”.  
NOTE  
• “Tone Control” settings are not reflected to ZONE2 and ZONE3.  
The tone cannot be adjusted in the direct mode. |
| Bass          | –6dB – +6dB  
“Bass” can be set when “Tone Control” is set to “ON”. |
| Treble        | –6dB – +6dB  
“Treble” can be set when “Tone Control” is set to “ON”. |
Audio/Video Adjust

Audio Settings

Audio Adjust

Audio Adjustments can be selected after Audyssey Auto Setup has been performed. For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see page 109.

NOTE

If you have not performed Auto Setup, or if you change the speaker settings after performing Auto Setup, you may not be able to select Dynamic EQ/Dynamic Volume, and “Run Audyssey” may be displayed. In this case, either perform Audyssey Auto Setup over again or perform “Restore” (page 12) to return to the settings after Audyssey Auto Setup was run.

Setting items Setting details

MultEQ XT
Select one equalizer from three modes. MultEQ XT corrects both time and frequency response problems in the listening area based on Audyssey Auto Setup calibration. We recommend “Audyssey”. MultEQ XT is the prerequisite function for Dynamic EQ and Dynamic Volume.

Audyssey: Optimize the frequency response of all speakers.
Audyssey Byp. L/R: Optimize frequency response of speakers except front L and R speakers.
Audyssey Flat: Optimize frequency response of all speakers to flat response.
OFF: Turn “MultEQ XT” equalizer off.

• “Audyssey”, “Audyssey Byp. L/R” and “Audyssey Flat” can be selected after Audyssey Auto Setup has been performed. “Audyssey” is automatically selected after performing Audyssey Auto Setup. When “Audyssey”, “Audyssey Byp. L/R” or “Audyssey Flat” is selected, illuminates.

• After running Audyssey Auto Setup, if the Speaker Configuration, Distance, Channel Level, and Crossover Frequency have changed without increasing the number of speakers measured, only illuminates.

• Pressing MULT Eq makes this setting.

NOTE

• “MultEQ XT” and “Manual” cannot be selected when “EQ Customize” is set to “Not Used” (page 81).

• When using headphones, “MultEQ XT” is automatically set to “OFF”.

Dynamic EQ
Solve the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Works with MultEQ XT.

ON: Use Dynamic EQ.
OFF: Do not use Dynamic EQ.

• is displayed when set to “ON”.

• Buttons on the remote control unit or main unit can be used for operations. Press DYN EQ/VOL.

Each time DYN EQ/VOL is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Dynamic EQ: ON
Dynamic Volume: Heavy

Dynamic EQ: ON
Dynamic Volume: Medium

Dynamic EQ: ON
Dynamic Volume: OFF

Dynamic EQ: OFF
Dynamic Volume: OFF

Dynamic EQ: OFF
Dynamic Volume: Light

Reference Level Offset
Audyssey Dynamic EQ is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (6 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard.

0dB [Film Ref]: This is the default setting and should be used when listening to movies.
5dB: Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
10dB: Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
15dB: Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.

Setting is enabled when “Dynamic EQ” is “ON” (page 74).
Basic version

Information

ENGLISH

DEUTSCH

FRANÇAIS

ITALIANO

ESPAÑOL

NEDERLANDS

SVENSKA

Advanced version

Setting items

Setting details

Dynamic Volume®
Solve the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.

Heavy : Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
Medium : Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
Light : Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
OFF : Do not use "Dynamic Volume".

• "Dynamic Volume" is displayed when set to "ON".

• If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in Auto Setup (see page 11), the setting is automatically changed to "Heavy".

• Buttons on the remote control unit or main unit can be used for operations.

Press DYN EQ/VOL.

Each time DYN EQ/VOL is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

DYN EQ : ON
Dynamic Volume : Heavy

DYN EQ : ON
Dynamic Volume : Medium

DYN EQ : ON
Dynamic Volume : Light

OFF

A-DSX Soundstage

Adjust Audyssey DSX™ setting and sound stage parameters.

Default settings are underlined.

Setting items

Setting details

Audyssey DSX
Provides more immersive surround sound by adding the new channels.

ON-Height : Turn on A-DSX processing for height expansion.

ON-Wide : Turn on A-DSX processing for wide expansion.

OFF : Do not set Audyssey DSX.

• This can also be set by pressing A-DSX.

• The Audyssey DSX indicator illuminates on the display.

Stage Width
Adjust sound stage width when using front wide speakers.

Stage Height
Adjust sound stage height when using front height speakers.

About Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion (A-DSX)

Audyssey DSX is a scalable surround expansion system that adds new channels to improve the surround impression. Based on research in human hearing Audyssey DSX adds a pair of Wide channels in the front because that information is critical in the rendering of a realistic soundstage.

Audyssey DSX then adds a pair of Height channels above the main front channels to reproduce the next most important acoustical and perceptual cues related to soundstage depth. In addition to creating these new channels, Audyssey DSX applies Surround Envelopment Processing to enhance the blend between the front and side/back surround channels. The result is a much more seamless and enveloping home theater experience.

Remote control operation buttons

1. Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
2. Confirm the setting
3. Return to previous menu
## Audio/Video Adjust

### Manual EQ

**Default settings are underlined.**

Use the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker. “Manual EQ” can be set when “MultEQ® XT” setting (page 74) is “Manual”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjust CH</strong></td>
<td>Correct the tone of each speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Select the speaker tone adjustment method.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All : Adjust the tone of all speakers together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L/R : Adjust the tone of left and right speakers together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Each : Adjust the tone of each speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Select the speaker.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Select the adjustment frequency band.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>63Hz / 125Hz / 250Hz / 500Hz / 1kHz / 2kHz / 4kHz / 8kHz / 16kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select the speakers you want to adjust when “L/R” or “Each” is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Adjust the level.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-20.0dB – +6.0dB (0.0dB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Base Curve Copy</strong></td>
<td>Copy “Audyssey Flat” curve from MultEQ® XT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yes : Copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No : Do not copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Base Curve Copy” is displayed after Audyssey® Auto Setup has been performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default</strong></td>
<td>The “Manual EQ” settings are returned to the default settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yes : Reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No : Do not reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### M-DAX

**Default settings are underlined.**

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The M-DAX function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also corrects the sense of volume of the bass to obtain richer sound with compressed audio signals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OFF</strong> : Do not use M-DAX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LOW</strong> : Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MID</strong> : Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HIGH</strong> : Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- This item can be set with analog signals or when a PCM signal (fs = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This cannot be set when the surround mode is set to “DIRECT” or “PURE DIRECT”.
- This item default setting is “OFF”.
- If a setting other than “OFF” is selected, the M-DAX indicator lights.
- Pressing M-DAX on the remote control unit or the main unit makes this setting.

### Audio Delay

**Default settings are underlined.**

While viewing video, manually adjust the time to delay audio output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0ms – 200ms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- This item can be set within the range of 0 to 100 ms when “Auto Lip Sync” is set to “ON” and when a TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync is connected.
- Store “Audio Delay” for each input source.
- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when “Video Mode” (page 70) is set to “Auto” or “Game”.
- This can also be set by pressing A.DELAY on the remote control unit.

### Remote control operation buttons

- Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
- Confirm the setting
- Return to previous menu
### Manual Setup

Set when changing Audyssey® Auto Setup settings, or when changing the audio, video, display or other settings.

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey Auto Setup, it will not be possible to set MuHEQ® XT, Dynamic EQ® and Dynamic Volume® (page 74, 75).
- Can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

#### Menu operation

1. Press AMP to set the remote control unit to amplifier operation mode.
2. Press MENU. The menu is displayed on the TV screen.
3. Press △ or ▽ to select the menu to be set or operated.
4. Press ENTER or ➤ to enter the setting.

- To return to the previous item, press RETURN.
- Exiting the Menu, press MENU while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

#### Items that can be set with the Manual Setup procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speaker Setup (page 78)</th>
<th>HDMI Setup (page 80)</th>
<th>Audio Setup (page 81)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amp Assign</td>
<td>HDMI Mode</td>
<td>Network Setup (page 81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Config.</td>
<td>HDMI Audio Out</td>
<td>Network Connecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bass Setting</td>
<td>HDMI Control</td>
<td>Rhapsody Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone Control</td>
<td>Standby Source</td>
<td>Napster Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Level</td>
<td>Power Off Control</td>
<td>Network Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crossover Frequency</td>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Source Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GUI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Assign surround back AMP for other use
- Set surround playback level to 7.1 when 7.1 mode
- Make settings for wired LAN
- Make settings for audio playback in a ZONE2
- Make settings for volume control

---

### Picture Adjust

**Default settings are underlined.**

- This item can be set when the input source is BD, DVD, VCR, SAT, GAME, AUX1, NET/USB, TV.
- With input sources other than the ones above, this item can be set when “Video Select” is selected. In this case, the original input source settings are called out.
- Can be set when the “Video Convert” setting (page 70) is “ON”.
- “GAME” or “TV” can be set when “HDMI” (page 69) or “Component” (page 69) has been assigned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>–6 – +6 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>0 – +12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chroma Level</td>
<td>–6 – +6 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue</td>
<td>–6 – +6 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNR</td>
<td>OFF / Low / Mid / High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enhancer</td>
<td>0 – +12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- “DNR” and “Enhancer” are each effective with HDMI output.
- The value set at “Picture Adjust” is stored in the memory individually for each input source.
**Manual Setup**

### Speaker Setup

**Default settings are underlined.**

- Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey Auto Setup.
- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey Auto Setup, it will not be possible to select MultEQ XT, Dynamic EQ and Dynamic Volume (page 74, 75).
- Manual Setup can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

#### Audio output from each PRE OUT terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRE OUT Channel</th>
<th>UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminal</th>
<th>BALANCED PRE OUT terminal</th>
<th>Audio Output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FL/FR</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>SW1/SW2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FL/FR</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>SW1/SW2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front A</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The output audio differs depending on the “Amp Assign” settings.

#### Setting items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amp Assign</strong></td>
<td>Set the speakers connected to the UNBALANCED and BALANCED PRE OUT SBL/SBR terminals of the power amp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Speaker Config.</strong></td>
<td>Select speaker configuration and size (bass reproduction capability).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

Do not use the outward shape of the speaker to determine selection of a "Large" or "Small" speaker. Instead, use the frequencies set in "Crossover Frequency" (page 80) as the standard for determining bass reproduction capability.

- **Front**: Set the front speaker size.
  - **Large**: Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.
  - **Small**: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.
  - When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".
  - When "Front" is set to "Small", "Center", "Surround", "S.Back", "F.Height" and "F.Wide" cannot be set to "Large".

- **Center**: Set the presence and size of the center speaker.
  - **Large**: Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.
  - **Small**: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.
  - **None**: Select when a center speaker is not connected.
  - "Large" is not displayed when "Front" is set to "Small".

- **Subwoofer**: Set the presence of a subwoofer.
  - **Yes**: Use a subwoofer.
  - **No**: Select when a subwoofer is not connected.
  - When "Front" is set to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set to "Yes".

#### Setting details

- **Surround**: Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.
  - **Large**: Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.
  - **Small**: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.
  - **None**: Select when the surround speakers are not connected.
  - When "Surround" is set to "None", "S.Back", "F.Height" and "F.Wide" can automatically set to "None".

- **S.Back**: Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.
  - **Large**: Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.
  - **Small**: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.
  - **None**: Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.

- **2spkr**: Use two surround back speakers.

- **1spkr**: Use one surround back speaker. When you select this setting, connect the surround back speaker to the left (L) channel.

- **None**: Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.

**NOTE**

When "Amp Assign" setting (page 78) is other than "Normal", you cannot make the "S.Back" setting.

- **F.Height**: Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.
  - **Large**: Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.
  - **Small**: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.
  - **None**: Select when the front height speakers are not connected.

**NOTE**

When "Amp Assign" setting (page 78) is other than "Normal", you cannot make the "F.Height" setting.
### Manual Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Speaker Config.</strong></td>
<td>• <strong>F.Wide</strong>: Set the presence and size of the front wide speakers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Continued)</td>
<td>• <strong>Large</strong>: Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Small</strong>: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong>: Select when the front wide speakers are not connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bass Setting</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subwoofer Mode</strong>: Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>LFE</strong>: The low range signal of the channel set to “Small” speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>LFE+Main</strong>: The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When “Amp Assign” setting ([page 78]) is other than “Normal”, you cannot make the “F.Wide” setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LPF for LFE</strong>: Set LFE signal playback range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distance</strong></td>
<td><strong>Unit</strong>: Set the unit of distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Feet / Meters</strong>: Set the minimum variable width of the distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1ft / 0.1ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0.1m / 0.01m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Front L / Front R / Center / Subwoofer / Surround L / Surround R / S.Back L</strong> /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>S.Back L</strong> / F.Height L / F.Height R / F.Wide L / F.Wide R**: Select the speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When the “Speaker Config.” is set to “1spkr”, “S.Back” setting ([page 78]) is set to “1spkr”, “S.Back” is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When “Speaker Config.” is set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE”, no sound may output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected surround mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When “Amp Assign” setting ([page 78]) is set to “Yes”, “LFE” is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE</strong>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When “Amp Assign” setting ([page 78]) is other than “Normal”, you cannot make the “F.Wide” setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Channel Level</strong></td>
<td><strong>Set the volume of the test tone to be the same when it is output from each speaker.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Distance</strong> (Continued)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the “Amp Assign” ([page 78]) and “Speaker Config.” ([page 78]) settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default settings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front L / Front R / Center / Subwoofer / F.Height L / F.Height R / F.Wide L / F.Wide R: 12.0 ft (3.6 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Surround L / Surround R / S.Back L / S.Back R: 10.0 ft (3.0 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20 ft (6.0 m).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE</strong>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speakers set to “None” in “Speaker Config.” ([page 78]) are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Default</strong>: The “Distance” settings are returned to the default settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Yes</strong>: Reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>No</strong>: Do not reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When you select “Default” and press ENTER, the “Default Setting?” prompt is displayed. Select either “Yes” or “No”, and press ENTER.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Channel Level</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Set the volume of the test tone to be the same when it is output from each speaker.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Test Tone Start</strong>: Output test tone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Front L</strong> / F.Height L / Center / F.Height R / Front R / F.Wide L / Surround R / S.Back R / S.Back L / F.Height R / F.Wide L / F.Wide R / Subwoofer**: Select the speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When “Amp Assign” setting ([page 78]) is set to “1spkr”, “S.Back” is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When “Amp Assign” setting ([page 78]) is set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE”, no sound may output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected surround mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE</strong>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When “Amp Assign” setting ([page 78]) is other than “Normal”, you cannot make the “F.Wide” setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Default</strong>: The “Distance” settings are returned to the default settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Yes</strong>: Reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>No</strong>: Do not reset to the defaults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When you select “Default” and press ENTER, the “Default Setting?” prompt is displayed. Select either “Yes” or “No”, and press ENTER.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Remote control operation buttons
- Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)
- Confirm the setting
- Return to previous menu
## Manual Setup

### Setting items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crossover Frequency</strong></td>
<td>Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer. Set the Crossover Frequency to suit the bass reproduction capability of the speaker being used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crossover</strong></td>
<td>Set the crossover frequency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advanced</strong></td>
<td>Specify crossover frequency for each speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Front / Center / Surround / S.Back / F.Height / F.Wide</td>
<td>Select the speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz</td>
<td>Set the crossover frequency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• “Crossover Frequency” can be set when the “Bass Setting” – “Subwoofer Mode” (page 79) setting is “LFE+Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Always set the crossover frequency to “80Hz”. When using small speakers, however, we recommend setting the crossover frequency to a higher frequency.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• For speakers set to “Small”, sound below the crossover frequency is cut from the sound output. The cut bass sound is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The speakers that can be set when “Advanced” is selected differ depending on the “Subwoofer Mode” setting (page 79).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Config.” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If set to “LFE+Main”, this setting can be made regardless of the speaker size.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RGB Range</strong></td>
<td>Set the video range of RGB output from the HDMI connector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Output with RGB video range (16 (black) to 235 (white)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Output with RGB video range (0 (black) to 255 (white)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto Lip Sync</strong></td>
<td>Make automatic compensation for timing shift in audio and video output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Compensated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Not compensated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HDMI Audio Out</strong></td>
<td>Select HDMI audio output device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMP</td>
<td>Play back through speakers connected to this unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>Play back through TV connected to this unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitor Out</strong></td>
<td>Select settings for HDMI monitor output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 1</td>
<td>A TV connected to the HDMI OUT 1 terminal is always used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 2</td>
<td>A TV connected to the HDMI OUT 2 terminal is always used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With “Resolution” (page 70) not set to “Auto”, check whether the TV you are using is compatible with the resolution under “HDMI Information” – “HDMI Monitor 1 Information” and “HDMI Monitor 2 Information” (page 88).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HDMI Control</strong></td>
<td>You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Use HDMI control function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Do not use HDMI control function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

- When “HDMI Control” is set to “ON”, it consumes more standby power. If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.
- "HDMI Control" does not work when the power to the equipment is off. Either turn power on or set to standby.
- The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control.
- If the “HDMI Control” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
## Standby Source
Sets the HDMI input source to put into standby when the power is on.

**Last**: This item is set at the last-used input source.

“Standby Source” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “ON”.

## Power Off Control
Links the power standby of this unit to external equipment.

**All**: If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
**Video**: If power to a connected TV is turned off when the input source is BD / DVD / VCR / SAT / GAME / AUX1 / TV, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
**OFF**: This unit does not link with power to a TV.

“Power Off Control” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “ON”.

## Audio Setup
Make settings for audio playback.

### 7.1ch IN SW Level
Setup playback method for analog signals inputted from 7.1CH INPUT connectors.

**Subwoofer Level**: Set playback level of subwoofer signal input from the 7.1CH INPUT connector.
- **+10dB**: This is the recommended level.
- **+15dB/+5dB/0dB**: Select the level according to the player being used.

### EQ Customize
Set so that unused equalizer settings are not displayed when MUTE is pressed.

**Audyssey Byp. L/R**: Set when not using “Audyssey Byp. L/R” equalizer.
- **Used**: Use.
- **Not Used**: Do not use.

**Audyssey Flat**: Set when not using “Audyssey Flat” equalizer.
- **Used**: Use.
- **Not Used**: Do not use.

**Manual**: Set when not using the “Manual” equalizer.
- **Used**: Use.
- **Not Used**: Do not use.

### Network Setup
Make network settings.

#### Network Connecting
Make settings for wired LAN.

1. Connect the LAN cable (page 24 “Connecting to a home network (LAN)”).
2. Turn on this unit (page 7 “Turn on power”).
   This unit performs automatic network setup due to the DHCP function.
   When connecting to a network that has no DHCP function, perform the setting in step 3.
3. Set the IP address at the “Network Connecting”.

#### Network Connecting
- **DHCP**: OFF
- **IP Address**: 192.168.100.19
- **Subnet Mask**: 255.255.255.000
- **Default Gateway**: 000.000.000.000
- **Primary DNS**: 000.000.000.000
- **Secondary DNS**: 000.000.000.000

**Manual Setup**
Set IP address and proxy manually

**RETURN** Return

- **DHCP**: OFF
- **IP Address**: [192.168.100.019]
- **Subnet Mask**: [255.255.255.000]
- **Default Gateway**: 000.000.000.000
- **Primary DNS**: 000.000.000.000
- **Secondary DNS**: 000.000.000.000

**Exit**

**Proxy**

- **On the menu, select “Network Connecting” – “Detail” and press ENTER**.
- **Use ** to set “DHCP” to “OFF”, then press **.**
   The DHCP function is disabled.
- **Use ** to input the address and press **.**

**Set IP address manually**

**Not Used**

#### Remote control operation buttons
- **Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)**
- **Confirm the setting**
- **Return** Return to previous menu
### Manual Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network Connecting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Continued)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>①</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to select “Exit” and press  ( \text{ENTER} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>②</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to select “Network Connecting” – “Detail” and press  ( \text{ENTER} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>③</td>
<td>Use  ( \uparrow )  to set “Proxy” and press  ( \text{ENTER} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>④</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to set “Proxy” to “ON” and press  ( \downarrow ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The proxy server is enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Proxy settings

- Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.

#### Proxy settings (Continued)

1. On the menu, select “Network Connecting” – “Detail” and press  \( \text{ENTER} \).
2. Use  \( \downarrow \)  to select “Proxy” and press  \( \text{ENTER} \).
3. Use  \( \downarrow \)  to set “Proxy” to “ON” and press  \( \downarrow \). The proxy server is enabled.

### Setting items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network Connecting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Continued)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>①</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to select the proxy server input method, and then press  ( \downarrow ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>②</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to input the proxy server address or domain name and press  ( \text{ENTER} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>③</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to input the proxy server port number and press  ( \text{ENTER} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>④</td>
<td>Use  ( \downarrow )  to select “Exit” and press  ( \text{ENTER} ).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other

- Network function on/off setting during standby, and PC language setting.
- Network Standby: Set the network function on/off during standby.

#### Other (Continued)

- **ON**: Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.
- **OFF**: Suspend network function during standby.

#### PC Language

- Select computer environment language.

#### Friendly Name Edit

- The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. Up to 63 characters can be input. The default Friendly Name on first use is “marantz:[AV7005]”.

#### Network Standby

- **ON**: Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.
- **OFF**: Suspend network function during standby.

#### Other

- **Yes**: Reset to the defaults.
- **No**: Do not reset to the defaults.

### Remote control operation buttons

- **\( \uparrow \)**  \( \downarrow \)**  \( \leftarrow \)**  \( \rightarrow \)**
- **\( \text{ENTER} \)** Confirm the setting
- **\( \text{RETURN} \)** Return to previous menu
Zone Setup

Set the audio to play back with multi-zone (ZONE2, ZONE3).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bass</td>
<td>Adjust low frequency range (bass).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treble</td>
<td>Adjust high frequency range (treble).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPF</td>
<td>Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level Lch</td>
<td>Adjust the left channel output level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level Rch</td>
<td>Adjust the right channel output level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel</td>
<td>Set the signal output from multi-zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Level</td>
<td>Set the volume output level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Limit</td>
<td>Make a setting for maximum volume.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Default settings are underlined.

Remote control operation buttons

- Press 
- Press 
- Press 
- Press 
- Press 
- Press 

Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)

Confirm the setting

Return to previous menu
Manual Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power On Level</strong></td>
<td>Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last</td>
<td>Use the memorized setting from the last session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– – – (0)</td>
<td>Always mute when power is turned on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–80dB – 18dB (1 – 99)</td>
<td>The volume is adjusted to the set level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This can be set when the multi-zone “Volume Level” setting (v page 83) is “Variable”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is displayed from 0 to 99 when “Volume Display” (v page 84) is set to “Absolute”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mute Level</strong></td>
<td>Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full</td>
<td>The sound is muted entirely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–40dB</td>
<td>The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–20dB</td>
<td>The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Option Setup

Make various other settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Control</strong></td>
<td>Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Display</td>
<td>Set how volume is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>Display –dB (Min), in the range –80.5 dB – 18 dB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>Display in the range 0 [Min] – 99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The “Volume Display” setting is applied also to the “Volume Limit” and “Power On Level” display method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The “Volume Display” setting applies to all zones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Limit</td>
<td>Make a setting for maximum volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Do not set a maximum volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–20dB (61) / –10dB (71) / 0dB (81)</td>
<td>The volume is adjusted to the set level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power On Level</strong></td>
<td>Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last</td>
<td>Use the memorized setting from the last session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– – – (0)</td>
<td>Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–80dB – 18dB (1 – 99)</td>
<td>The volume is adjusted to the set level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mute Level</strong></td>
<td>Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full</td>
<td>The sound is muted entirely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–40dB</td>
<td>The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–20dB</td>
<td>The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source Delete</strong></td>
<td>Remove from the display input sources that are not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD / DVD / VCR / SAT / GAME / AUX1 / NET / USB / TV / CD / CDR / PHONO / SIRIUS / HD Radio / M-XPort</td>
<td>Select input source that is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ON: Use this source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Delete: Do not use this source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GUI</strong></td>
<td>Make the settings related to displays on the TV screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screensaver</td>
<td>Make screensaver settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ON: The screensaver is activated during menu display, NET/USB, iPod, SIRIUS or HD Radio screen display if no operation is performed for an approximately 3-minute continuous period. When you press ( \boldsymbol{\Delta, \nabla, \leftarrow, \rightarrow} ), the screensaver is cancelled and the screen before that screen saver started is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• OFF: Screensaver is not activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remote control operation buttons

Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right) Confirm the setting Return to previous menu
### GUI (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall Paper</strong></td>
<td>Set wallpaper to display in the background when playback is stopped, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Picture</td>
<td>Set the background to a picture (Marantz logo).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Black</td>
<td>Set the background to black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Format</strong></td>
<td>Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• NTSC</td>
<td>Select NTSC output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• PAL</td>
<td>Select PAL output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed.
1. Press and hold the main unit’s `A-DSX` and `RETURN` for at least 3 seconds. “Video Format” appears on the display.
2. Press `<` or `>` and set the video signal format.
3. Press the main unit’s `ENTER`, `MENU` or `RETURN` to complete the setting.

---

### Manual Setup

#### Setting items Setting details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>GUI (Continued)</strong></th>
<th><strong>Setting items</strong></th>
<th><strong>Setting details</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TUNER</strong></td>
<td>Set the tuner screen display time when the input source is “SIRIUS” or “HD Radio”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Always</td>
<td>Show display continuously.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 30sec</td>
<td>Show display for 30 seconds after operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 10sec</td>
<td>Show display for 10 seconds after operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• OFF</td>
<td>Turn display off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>iPod</strong></td>
<td>Set the iPod screen display time when the input source is “NET/USB”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Always</td>
<td>Show display continuously.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 30sec</td>
<td>Show display for 30 seconds after operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 10sec</td>
<td>Show display for 10 seconds after operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• OFF</td>
<td>Turn display off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Component 2 Output
Set whether to use the component 2 output terminal as MAIN ZONE or ZONE2.
- **MAIN ZONE**: Use the component 2 output terminal as a monitor output for MAIN ZONE.
- **ZONE2**: Use the component 2 output terminal as a monitor output for ZONE2.

#### Zone Rename
Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.
- Up to 10 characters can be input.
- For character input, see page 65.

#### Trigger Out
Select the condition for activating Trigger Out 1/2 for the input source, surround mode, etc.
- **ON**: Activate trigger on this mode.
- **– – –**: Do not activate trigger on this mode.

---

### GUI (Continued)

| **NET/USB** | Set the NET/USB screen display time when the input source is “NET/USB”. |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|
|   • Always | Show display continuously. |
|   • 30sec | Show display for 30 seconds after operation. |
|   • 10sec | Show display for 10 seconds after operation. |
|   • OFF | Turn display off. |

---

**NOTE**
When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.

- **Text**: Display the details of operation when switching surround mode, input mode, etc.
- **ON**: Turn display on.
- **OFF**: Turn display off.

- **Master Volume**: Display the master volume during adjustment.
  - **Bottom**: Display at the bottom.
  - **Top**: Display at the top.
  - **OFF**: Turn display off.

- **When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed on movie subtitles, set to “Top”**.

- **NET/USB**: Set the NET/USB screen display time when the input source is “NET/USB”.
  - **Always**: Show display continuously.
  - **30sec**: Show display for 30 seconds after operation.
  - **10sec**: Show display for 10 seconds after operation.
  - **OFF**: Turn display off.

---

**Remote control operation buttons**
- **Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)**
- **Confirm the setting**
- **Return to previous menu**

---

85
Manual Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display</strong></td>
<td>Set the display on/off setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Display is always on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Display Auto OFF</strong>: Display is off except when showing the status display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Display OFF</strong>: Display is always off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>This can also be set by pressing DISPLAY.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Each time DISPLAY is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong> Display Auto Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Display OFF</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setup Lock</strong></td>
<td>Protect settings from inadvertent change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Turn protection on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Turn protection off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When canceling the setting, set “Setup Lock” to “OFF”.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NOTE</strong></td>
<td>When “Setup Lock” is set to “ON”, the settings listed below can no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>longer be changed. Also, “SETUP LOCKED!” is displayed if you attempt to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>operate related settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Menu operations</strong>: Channel Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>M-DAX</strong>: MultiEQ® XT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Dynamic Volume®</strong>: Dynamic EQ®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maintenance Mode</strong></td>
<td>Use when receiving maintenance from a Marantz service engineer or custom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>installer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NOTE</strong></td>
<td>Only use this function if so instructed by a Marantz serviceperson or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>installer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting items**     **Setting details**

**Firmware Update**     Update the firmware of this unit.
- **Check for Update**: Check for firmware updates. You can also check approximately how long it will take to complete an update.
- **Start**: Execute the update process.
  When updating starts, the power indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. The amount of update time which has elapsed is displayed.
  When updating is complete, the power indicator becomes green and normal status is resumed.
  - If updating fails, the set automatically retries, but if updating is still not possible, one of the messages shown below is displayed. If the display reads as shown below, check the settings and network environment, then update again.
    - **Display Description**
      - **Updating fail**: Updating failed.
      - **Login failed**: Failure to log into server.
      - **Server is busy**: Server is busy. Wait a while then try again.
      - **Connection fail**: Failure in connecting to server.
      - **Download fail**: Downloading of the firmware has failed.

**Add New Feature**     Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an update.
- **Upgrade**: Execute the upgrade process.
  When updating starts, the power indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. The amount of update time which has elapsed is displayed.
  When upgrading is complete, the power indicator becomes green and normal status is resumed.
  - If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in “Firmware Update” will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment, then update again.

**Upgrade Status**: Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.
- See the Marantz website for details about updates.
  When the procedure is complete, “Registered” is displayed in this menu and updates can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, “Not Registered” is displayed.
  The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.
  The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding RETURN for at least 3 seconds.

**Remote control operation buttons**
- **Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)**
- **Confirm the setting**
- **Return** Return to previous menu
### Manual Setup

**Notes concerning use of “Firmware Update” and “Add New Feature”**

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for a broadband Internet connection (page 24).
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Even with a broadband connection to the Internet, approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed.
- Furthermore, updating/upgrading the firmware may reset the backup data for the parameters, etc. set for this unit.
- The following backup data may be erased after an update or upgrade.
  - Internet radio preset channel
  - Internet radio Recently Played data
  - Username registered for Flickr Contact
  - Data in Internet radio, media server and USB memory device
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the **ON/STANDBY** on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. “Update retry” appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment.

- Information regarding the “Firmware Update” function and “Add New Feature” will be announced on the Marantz web site each time related plans are defined.
- When usable new firmware is released with “Firmware Update” or “Add New Feature”, a notification message is displayed on the menu screen. When you do not want to be notified, set “Update Notification” (page 83) and “Upgrade Notification” (page 83) to “OFF”.

---

### Remote control operation buttons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Confirm the setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>Return to previous menu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Show information about current settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAIN ZONE</td>
<td>This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>displayed differs according to the input source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Source / Name / Surround Mode / Input Mode / Decode Mode / HDMI / Digital /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Component / Video Select / Video Mode / Content Type / Video Convert / I/p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scaler / Resolution / Progressive Mode / Aspect etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE2</td>
<td>This item shows information about settings for ZONE2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Power / Select Source / Volume Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE3</td>
<td>This item shows information about settings for ZONE3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Power / Select Source / Volume Level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Audio Input Signal

Show information about audio input signals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Setting details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surround Mode</td>
<td>The currently set surround mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>The input signal type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fs</td>
<td>The input signal’s sampling frequency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td>The number of channels in the input signal (front, surround, LFE).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offset</td>
<td>The dialogue normalization correction value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag</td>
<td>This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“MATRIX” is displayed with Dolby Digital EX and DTS-ES Matrix signals, “DISCRETE” with DTS-ES Discrete signals.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dialogue normalization function

This function is automatically activated when playing Dolby Digital sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources. The correction value can be checked using the STATUS.

The figure is the corrected value. This cannot be changed.

Remote control operation buttons

Move the cursor (Up/Down/Left/Right)

CONFIRM Confirm the setting

RETURN Return to previous menu

HDMI Information

Show information about HDMI input/output signals and monitor.

HDMI Monitor 1 Information / HDMI Monitor 2 Information

• Interface / Supported resol.

“HDMI Monitor 1 Information” or “HDMI Monitor 2 Information” displays information on the HDMI monitor currently being used.

Preset Channel

Show information about preset channels.

A / B / C / D / E / F / G


NET/USB SIRIUS

HD Radio
Other settings

Remote control settings

- When you connect a remote control receiver unit (purchased separately) to the REMOTE CONTROL IN terminal of this unit, use the following procedure to disable the remote sensor function of this unit.
- The remote sensor function of remote control signals is enabled by default.

Switches light illumination on/off

You can switch the lighting around the main display on or off.

- The factory setting is “ON”.

Press and hold DISPLAY on the main unit for 3 seconds.
- Carry out the same procedure if you want to change the settings again.

Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

When the main unit is in standby mode, press ON/STANDBY while holding down STATUS and ENTER on the main unit.

“Remote Lock:ON” is shown on the display, and the infrared light receiving function is disabled.

Enabling the remote sensor function

When the main unit is in standby mode, press ON/STANDBY while holding down STATUS and ENTER on the main unit.

The infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

NOTE

If a remote control receiver unit (purchased separately) is not connected, do not perform this setting. If you do, you will not be able to operate this unit using the remote control unit.
Operating the connected devices by remote control unit

Registering the supplied preset codes in the remote control unit enables you to operate devices made by other manufacturers.

Operating AV equipment

1. Press the input source select button (page 25).
   The remote control operating mode switches as shown in the table below, and the mode name is shown in the remote control display.

   ![Input source select buttons]

   **NOTE**
   Press the input source select buttons once to switch the operation mode of the remote control unit supplied with this unit. Press the input source select buttons twice consecutively to switch the operation mode of the remote control unit and input source of this unit.

   ![Input source select buttons table]

   **NOTE**
   If a preset code is registered for this button, the remote control unit of this unit can control another devices.

   If the mode of the remote control unit is set to other than amp-operation mode, press AMP to switch the remote control unit to the amp-operation mode to perform the following operations:
   • For menu operation by pressing **MENU**
   • For setting the channel level of the unit by pressing **CH LVL**
   • For performing direct playback
   • For switching Audyssey DSX™, MultEQ XT®, Dynamic EQ® and Dynamic Volume® settings.
   • For using the Video Select function.
   • For using the sleep timer function.
   • For displaying the Source Select screen.
   • For using the M-DAX function.
   • For directly selecting "AUTO" and "STEREO" of the listening modes.

2. Operate this unit or the device whose input source is switched.
   • For details, refer to the operating instructions for each device.
   For operations of iPod and HD Radio receiver, see the following pages.
   • iPod (page 28)
   • HD Radio receiver (page 34)
Registering preset codes

When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers.

NOTE

• No preset codes other than BD, DVD, TV, SAT and CD can be registered.
• In the factory settings, remote control codes for all Marantz products are registered.

Buttons used for operating the devices

1. SOURCE ON/OFF
   For switching power of each device on or off.
2. △ ▽ ◄ ► ENTER
   For menu operation of each device.
3. MENU, SETUP, TOP MENU
   For displaying the menu of each device.
4. ► ◄ ▼ ► ▼ ▼ ► ► ► ►
5. Number button (0 – 9, +10)
6. PRESET +, PRESET –
7. TV POWER, TV INPUT
   For operating a TV.
   This button is enabled in any mode.

For details on operation with the remote control unit, see pages 28 – 43, 92.

Registering preset codes

The following two methods can be used for registering the preset code.

1. Entering a 4-digit code
2. Scanning the code table

Entering a 4-digit code

See the preset code list table for the code to be input.

1. Press and hold down the input source select buttons for the appliance to control, and press SET until indicator blinks twice.
   The back light flashes.

2. Press the 4-digit code for the appliance using the numeric buttons (code table at the end of this book).
   • The 4-digit code is shown in the remote control display.
   • When the settings are complete, “OK” is shown in the remote control display.
   • If “NG” is displayed in the remote control display, repeat steps 1 and 2, and enter the same code again.

Scanning the code table

1. Switch the power on of the device for which you want to set the preset code.

2. Press and hold down the input source select buttons for the appliance to control, and press SET until indicator blinks twice.
   The back light flashes.

3. Aim the remote control at the appliance and slowly alternate between pressing INPUT ▲ and SOURCE ON/OFF for the appliance.
   The preset code is shown in the remote control display.

4. Stop when the appliance turns off.

5. Press ENTER once to lock in the code.

Check the registered preset code

1. Press and hold down the input source select buttons for appliance to control, and press SET until indicator blinks twice and back light flashes.
   The back light flashes.

2. Press SEARCH/INFO.
   The display flashes twice, after which the set code is shown for 3 seconds in the remote control display.
Registering preset codes

Default settings for preset codes

The devices shown below are registered for each input source button as default. Settings can be changed according to the devices to be used.

1. Press and hold down the input source select buttons for appliance to control and press SET until indicator blinks twice.
   The back light flashes.

2. Enter the appropriate preset code (4 digits) from the table below.
   The display flashes twice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input source select buttons</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Preset code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AV</td>
<td>Blu-ray Disc player</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
<td>DVD player</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>Television</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td>Satellite set top box</td>
<td>4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>CD player</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE
After this procedure, the selected source reset to its initial code.

Operating components

The supplied remote control unit can control a component other than this unit.

1. Switch the input source (→ page 25).
2. Operate the component.
   • For details, refer to the component’s operating instructions.

Blu-ray Disc player / HD-DVD player / DVD player / DVD recorder operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOURCE ON/OFF</td>
<td>Power on/standby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>(Popup) Menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOP MENU</td>
<td>Top menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Auto search (cue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 – 9</td>
<td>Select title, chapter or channel selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLR</td>
<td>Clear the inputting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CD player / CD recorder operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOURCE ON/OFF</td>
<td>Power on/off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Auto search (cue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Pause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>……..</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLR</td>
<td>Clear the inputting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TV operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation buttons</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOURCE ON/OFF</td>
<td>TV power on/standby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHANNEL +, –</td>
<td>Switch channels (up/down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLR</td>
<td>Clear the inputting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV POWER</td>
<td>TV power on/standby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV INPUT</td>
<td>Switch TV input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operating learn function

1. If the AV device is not a Marantz device, or if the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device.
2. This remote control unit is capable of learning around 160 codes.

Remembering remote control codes from other devices

1. Place the Marantz remote control and remote control from the other device approximately 5 cm apart, with the remote control signal transmission sections facing each other.

2. Press and hold down SET and SOURCE SEL until the LEARN indicator blinks.

3. Press input source select buttons to select the input source.
   The input source is shown in the remote control display.

4. Select the button to be learned.
   LEARN indicator lights up.

5. Press and hold the button that you want to register on the other remote control until “OK” is displayed on the Marantz remote control display.
   • If “NG” is shown on the remote control display, perform step 5 again. If “NG” is shown again on the remote control display, the remote control may not be able to learn the code correctly. In this case, use the specialized remote control for the device.
   • If the remote control memory becomes full, “FULL” is shown on the remote control display. If you want to learn the code, you should erase other learned button.

6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 to learn other buttons for the same input source.

7. Repeat steps 3 to 6 to learn other input sources.

8. When programming of the remote control unit is completed, press SET.
   The LEARN display disappears, and the remote control unit exits learn mode.

NOTE
• The learning function is unavailable for all SOURCE ON/OFF, MACRO and HDMI in any mode.
• The learning function is unavailable for all buttons in TUNER mode, AMP mode, NET/USB mode and M-XP mode.
• The learning procedure does not operate correctly if the batteries have become worn.
• If no buttons are pressed for approximately 1 minutes while in the LEARN mode, the remote control unit automatically exits from the LEARN mode.
Operating learn function

Delete saved remote control codes

Codes can be erased in three ways: by buttons, sources, and by all memory contents.

1. **Delete remote control codes for each button**

   1. Press and hold down SET and SOURCE SEL until the LEARN indicator blinks.
   2. Press input source select buttons to select the input source you want to delete. The input source is shown in the remote control display.
   3. Press and hold down HDMI and press the learned button to be erased twice. “ERASE” is shown in the remote control display, and the mode returns to learning mode.

   • To return the normal mode, press SET.

2. **Delete remote control codes for each input source**

   1. Press and hold down SET and SOURCE SEL until the LEARN indicator blinks.
   2. Press and hold down HDMI and press the learned input source select buttons to be erased twice. “ERASE” is shown in the remote control display.
   3. Press ENTER to continue erasing.

   The • indicator blinks twice and the mode returns to LEARN mode.

   • To cancel the erasing operation, do not press ENTER, and simply press any other button.

   • To return the normal mode, press SET.

3. **Delete remote control codes for all input sources**

   1. Press and hold down SET and SOURCE SEL until the LEARN indicator blinks.
   2. Press and hold down HDMI and press ON and STANDBY. LEARN indicator lights.
   3. Press ENTER to continue erasing.

   “ERASE” is shown in the remote control display, and the mode returns to learning mode.

   • To cancel the erasing operation, do not press ENTER, and simply press any other button.

   • To return the normal mode, press SET.

**NOTE**

Erasing codes will return to the factory preset code, or there will leave empty if the button has no factory preset code.
Operating macro function

When the macro function is used, operations that usually require a complicated series of multiple button operations can be performed easily just by pressing the MACRO button.

• This device can remember up to 6 macro functions.
• Each macro can record a maximum of 10 steps.

[Example] To playback a DVD
1. Turn this unit’s power on
2. Switch this unit’s input source to DVD
3. Turn the TV’s power on
4. DVD Playback

Recording macro operations

[Example] Recording DVD playback operations to the number “1” button

1. Press and hold SET and MACRO together until “MACRO” flashes in the LEARN indicator, MACRO indicator and remote control display.
2. Press the macro operation number (“1”) that you want to record to.
   “M1-01” is shown in the remote control display.
   • If the number that you want to record to has already been recorded to, the recorded number flashes in the display.
3. Press the input source switch button (“DVD”) of the operation that you want to record along with the command button (“▶”).
   The macro operation step number is shown in the remote control display.
   • To record the amp input source, press AMP first, followed by the input source switching button.

4. When the macro operation recording is complete, press and hold ENTER until the LEARN indicator and MACRO indicator switch off.

   NOTE
   The RETURN, △ ▽ ◀ ▶, ENTER, VOLUME +, –, and CLR buttons cannot be recorded as macro operations.

Checking recorded macro operations

[Example] Checking the recorded macro operations to button “1”

1. Press and hold MACRO and MENU together until “MACRO” flashes in the LEARN indicator, MACRO indicator and remote control display.
2. Press the number button (“1”) that you want to check.
   The LEARN indicator, MACRO indicator and “M1-01” flashes in the remote control display.
3. Press the VOLUME +, –.
   • The LEARN indicator switches off, and “M1-01” is shown in the remote control display.
   • The recorded macro operation is performed.
4. Repeat step 3 until the final number of the macro operation is displayed.
   • The display returns to that of step 1.
   • When the macro operation number is displayed, the corresponding macro operation is performed.

5. When the macro operation check is complete, press and hold ENTER until the MACRO indicator switches off.

Editing recorded macro operations

[Example] Changing macro operation “1” recorded on number button “1” to “3”, and changing the number button to “2”

1. Press and hold MACRO and MENU together until “MACRO” flashes in the LEARN indicator, MACRO indicator and remote control display.
2. Press the number button (“1”) that you want to change.
   The LEARN indicator, MACRO indicator and “M1-01” flashes in the remote control display.
3. Press △ ▽ to select the macro operation button (“2”) to edit.
   After the macro operation button is displayed, the recorded operation is performed.
   • When the macro operation is updated as a recorded step, press the input source switching button, and then press the new step button (“2”).
   • To insert a new macro operation between recorded steps, after performing step 3, press MEMORY and then press the new step button (“2”).
   When a new step is introduced, if the total number of steps is already 10, the 10th step is deleted after the new step is introduced.
   • To delete recorded macro operations, after step 3, call the step number that you want to delete, and press CLR.
   • To return to step 1, press ENTER.
4. When the macro operation edit is complete, press and hold ENTER until the MACRO indicator switches off.
Operating macro function

Using macro operations

[Example] Using the recorded macro operations to button “1”

1 Press the MACRO. “MACRO” is shown in the MACRO indicator and remote control display.
2 Press the number button (”1”) that you want to use.
   Macro operations recorded to number button “1” are performed one at a time.
   • The step number shown in the remote control display disappears after the step is performed.
   • When all macro operations are completed, the remote control returns to the amp operation mode.

Deleting recorded macro operations

[Example] Deleting the macro operations recorded to button “2”

1 Press and hold MACRO and MENU together until “MACRO” flashes in the LEARN indicator, MACRO indicator and remote control display.
2 Press and hold CLR and the number (“2”) that you want to delete for approximately 3 seconds.
   “M2-CL” flashes in the remote control display.
3 Press the ENTER.
   The recorded macro operation is deleted, and the remote control returns to step 1.
   • To cancel the macro delete operation, press a different button without pressing ENTER.
4 When the macro operation delete is complete, press and hold ENTER until the MACRO indicator switches off.

Adjusting the interval time of macro operations transmitting

The macro operation transmission interval can be adjusted.
• The factory setting is “1 second”.

1 Press and hold MACRO and SOURCE SEL until “SETUP” is shown in the remote control display.
   “SETUP” is shown for 3 seconds in the remote control display, after which “MCR05z” is displayed.
   z The current transmission interval is shown.
2 Press  to change to the desired transmission interval.
   • The interval time can be changed from 0.5 to 5 seconds by 0.5 seconds step.
3 When the adjustment is complete, press and hold ENTER until the MACRO indicator switches off.

Setting the back light

Press the Light button on the side of the remote control, and the buttons on the remote control light for 2 seconds. If the Light button is pressed while the buttons are lit, the buttons remain lit for another 2 seconds.
• Backlight is set on in the factory settings.

Disabling the backlight

Press and hold both SET and STANDBY until indicator flashes twice.

Turning the backlight on

Press and hold both SET and ON until indicator flashes twice.

Operating macro function

Setting the back light

Press the Light button on the side of the remote control, and the buttons on the remote control light for 2 seconds. If the Light button is pressed while the buttons are lit, the buttons remain lit for another 2 seconds.
• Backlight is set on in the factory settings.

Disabling the backlight

Press and hold both SET and STANDBY until indicator flashes twice.

Turning the backlight on

Press and hold both SET and ON until indicator flashes twice.
Information

Here, we list various information related to this unit.
Please refer to this information as needed.

- Part names and functions  page 98
- Other information  page 103
- Troubleshooting  page 112
- Specifications  page 116
- Index  page 117
Part names and functions

Front panel

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ( ).

1. Power operation button  (ON/STANDBY)  (7, 12)
2. Power indicator  (12)
3. Door

When you are using buttons and/or terminals behind the door, press the bottom of the door to open it. When not using buttons and/or terminals behind the door, close it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.

4. VOLUME control knob  (26)
5. Remote control sensor  (102)
6. Main display  (99)
7. INPUT SELECTOR knob  (25)

With the door open

1. Headphones jack
When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the PRE OUT connectors.

NOTE
To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

2. SETUP MIC jack  (9, 52)
3. iPod/USB port  (20)
4. HDMI connector  (16)
5. DIGITAL connector  (19)
6. AUX1 INPUT connectors  (19)
7. RETURN button  (64 – 66)
8. ENTER button  (64 – 66)
9. Cursor buttons  (64 – 66)
10. MENU button  (66)
11. Sub display  (99)
12. Audyssey DSX™ button  (A-DSX)  (75)
13. M-DAX button / indicator  (76)
14. PURE DIRECT button / indicator  (46)
15. Dynamic EQ®/Dynamic Volume® button  (DYNAMIC EQ/VOL)  (74)
16. SURROUND MODE button  (44)
17. AUTO button  (44, 60, 115)
18. DISPLAY button  (60, 86)
19. STATUS button  (88)
20. Speaker A/B switching button  (SPKR A/B)  (26)
21. HDMI OUT button  (16)
22. HDMI OUT button  (16)
23. ZONE SELECT button  (62)
24. ZONE1 ON/OFF button  (62)
25. ZONE2 ON/OFF button  (62)
26. ZONE3 ON/OFF button  (62)
27. SLEEP button  (56)
28. BAND button  (32)
**Display**

**Main Display**

1. **Light illumination**
   - When the power to this device is switched on, the surrounding area is lit blue. The settings can be changed so the light does not switch on (page 89 "Switches light illumination on/off").

2. **Master volume indicator**
   - These light according to the setting of the master volume.

3. **Input source indicator**
   - The currently selected input source name is displayed.
   - If the input source name has been changed using “Input Setup” – “Rename” (page 71) in the menu, the input source name after the change is displayed.

4. **Surround back/front height/front wide channel indicators**
   - These light according to the setting of the surround back channels.
   - When audio is output from the front wide channels, the “W” indicators light.

5. **Audio speaker indicators**
   - These light according to the setting of the audio speakers.

6. **Monitor output indicator**
   - These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting.

7. **Master volume indicator**
   - These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting.

8. **MUTE indicator**
   - This lights when the mute mode is selected (page 26).

9. **HDMI indicator**
   - This is lit during HDMI connections.

10. **Input source indicator**
    - These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting.

11. **Sound input indicators**
    - When digital signals are input.

12. **Input channel indicators**
    - When playing HD Audio sources, the indicators light when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back or LFE channel) is input.

13. **Information display**
    - The input source name, surround mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

14. **Sleep timer indicator**
    - This lights when the sleep mode is selected (page 56).

15. **Multi-zone indicators**
    - When playing using HDMI connections.

16. **Decoder indicators**
    - These light when the respective decoders are operating.

17. **HD indicator**
    - This light during HD Radio reception.

**Sub Display**

- **Input signal indicators**
  - These light when digital signals are input.
  - When playing HD Audio sources, the indicator lights when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back or LFE channel) is input.
  - If there are two or more extension channels, the indicators light.

- **Input signal channel indicators**
  - These light when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back or LFE channel) is input.

- **Information display**
  - The input source name, surround mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

- **Surround back/front height/front wide channel indicators**
  - These light according to the setting of the surround back channels.
  - When audio is output from the front wide channels, the “W” indicators light.

- **Front speaker indicator**
  - This lights according to the setting of the front A and B speakers.

- **Monitor output indicator**
  - These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting.

- **Master volume indicator**
  - These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting.

- **MUTE indicator**
  - This lights when the mute mode is select (page 26).

- **AUDYSEY indicators**
  - Lighting is as follows, depending on the setting of “Dynamic EQ®” (page 74) and “Dynamic Volume®” (page 75).

- **Sleep timer indicator**
  - This lights when the sleep mode is selected (page 56).

- **Multi-zone indicators**
  - This lights when playing using ZONE2, ZONE3 (separate room) power is turned on (page 62).

- **Input mode indicators**
  - Set the audio input modes for the different input sources (page 71).

- **HDMI indicator**
  - This lights when playing using HDMI connections.

- **Tuner reception mode indicators**
  - These light according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to “HD Radio”.

   **STEREO**: In the FM mode, this light when receiving stereo broadcasts.

   **TUNED**: Lights when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

   **AUTO**: This light when in the auto tuning mode.

- **Decoder indicators**
  - These light when the respective decoders are operating.

- **HD indicator**
  - This light during HD Radio reception.
Rear panel

See the page indicated in parentheses ( ).

1. RS-232C connector .................................................. (54)
2. HD Radio antenna terminals ............................... (22)
3. Analog audio connectors ..................................... (17 – 21, 23)
4. UNBALANCED PRE OUT terminals .................. (6)
5. 7.1CH INPUT connectors .................................... (23)
6. BALANCED PRE OUT terminals ......................... (6)
7. AC inlet (AC IN) ....................................................... (7)
8. COMPONENT VIDEO connectors ..................... (17 – 19)
9. HDMI connectors ................................................... (16)
10. Digital audio connectors ..................................... (17 – 21)

- NETWORK connector .................................................. (24)
- FLASHER IN jack  Used when using a control BOX or other such control devices to control this unit.
- REMOTE CONTROL jacks ............................................. (53)
- M-XPort jack .............................................................. (23)
- SIRIUS connector ....................................................... (22)
- DC OUT jacks ............................................................. (54)
- VIDEO connectors .................................................... (17 – 19)
- SIGNAL GND terminal ............................................... (21)

NOTE

Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.
Remote control unit

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ( ).

1. Display
   - Display indicator ........................................... (93)
2. MACRO indicator .............................................. (95)
3. Information display
   - MACRO indicator ........................................... (95)
4. SOURCE power button .................................... (62, 92, 93)
5. SET button ...................................................... (91, 92, 93)
6. HDMI button ................................................... (16, 94)
7. Input mode button (A/D) ..................................... (71)
8. Input source select buttons .................................. (25)
9. Source select button (SOURCE SEL) ................. (25)
10. DISPLAY/Tuner mode (T.MODE) button ............... (32, 86)
11. SHIFT/TOP MENU button ................................. (33, 36, 65)
12. Cursor buttons (↑↓<>) ..................................... (64 – 66)
13. MENU button ................................................... (66)
14. MACRO button ............................................... (95)
15. Number buttons ............................................... (33, 36, 91, 95)
16. Clear button (CLR) ........................................... (96)
17. TUNING buttons (+, –) ....................................... (32)
18. Remote control signal transmitter
19. Power buttons (ON, STANDBY) ......................... (7, 12)
20. Speaker A/B button (SPKR A/B) ......................... (26)
21. TEST TONE button ........................................... (79)
22. Muting button (MUTE) ...................................... (79)
23. Light button .................................................... (96)
24. Master volume control buttons
   (VOLUME +, –) ..................................................... (26)
25. SURROUND mode (SURR.) ................................ (33, 36, 44)
26. SEARCH/Information (INFO) button ................. (27, 31, 33, 66)
27. ENTER button ................................................... (84 – 66)
28. RETURN button ................................................ (84 – 66)
29. System buttons
   - Pause button ................................................. (28, 29, 36 – 38, 40, 42, 43, 92)
   - Play button .................................................... (46)
   - Stop button ...................................................... (46)
   - Skip buttons ................................................... (46)
   - Search buttons ................................................. (46)
   - FM/AM band switching button (BAND) ............. (34)
20. STEREO button ................................................ (46)
21. AUTO buttons .................................................. (44, 60, 115)
22. MULTEQ® button ............................................. (74)
23. Audio delay button (A.DELAY) ......................... (76)
24. M-DAX button ................................................ (76)
25. Channel level button (CH LVL) ......................... (66)
26. SLEEP button ................................................... (66)
27. INSERT button .................................................. (65)
28. DELETE button ................................................ (65)
29. Pure direct button (P.DIRECT) ......................... (46)
30. REPEAT button ................................................ (28, 29)
31. RANDOM button .............................................. (28, 29)
32. Audyssey DSX button (A-DSX) ......................... (75)
33. Dynamic EQ®/Dynamic Volume® button
   (DYN EQ/VOL) .................................................. (74, 75)
34. Video select button (V.SEL) ............................... (69)
35. TV operation buttons
   (TV POWER / INPUT) ......................................... (92, 93)
36. CHANNEL/ PRESET buttons (+, –) ................. (33, 36, 92, 93)
Remote control unit

Inserting the batteries

1. Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
2. Load the two batteries properly as indicated by the marks in the battery compartment.
3. Put the rear cover back on.

NOTE
- Insert the specified batteries in the remote control unit.
- Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the remote control unit is operated close to the unit. (The supplied batteries are only for verifying operation.)
- When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the and marks in the battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
  - Do not attempt to charge dry batteries.
  - Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
  - Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.
  - If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
  - Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- Used batteries should be disposed of in accordance with the local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.

Approx. 23 ft / 7 m

NOTE
The set may function improperly or the remote control unit may not operate if the remote control sensor is exposed to direct sunlight, strong artificial light from an inverter type fluorescent lamp or infrared light.
**Trademark information**

This product uses the following technologies:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technology</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dolby TrueHD</strong></td>
<td>Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “Pro Logic” and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dolby Pro Logic II</strong></td>
<td>Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #s: 5,451,942; 5,996,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,816; 6,487,558; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 &amp; other U.S. and worldwide patents issued &amp; pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, &amp; DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio, and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dolby Virtual Speaker</strong></td>
<td>Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™, U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT is a registered trademark of Audyssey Laboratories. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is a registered trademark of Audyssey Laboratories. Audyssey Dynamic Volume® is a registered trademark of Audyssey Laboratories. Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion™ is a trademark of Audyssey Laboratories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dolby Digital Plus</strong></td>
<td>Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Limited. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, &amp; DTS Neural Surround and the DTS logos are trademark of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dolby Digital</strong></td>
<td>Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Limited. Dolby and the Symbol are registered trademarks, &amp; DTS Neural Surround and the DTS logos are trademark of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLNA®</strong></td>
<td>DLNA® and the DLNA Certified® logo are trademarks, service marks, or certification marks of the Digital Living Network Alliance. Device Class: DMP (Digital Media Player) DLNA Certified® Product Function: FINDS, PLAYS Content Type: audio, images, videos (Check supported media formats.) DLNA consumer website: <a href="http://www.dlna.org">www.dlna.org</a> Some content may not be compatible with other DLNA Certified® products (example: optional media formats)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HDMI</strong></td>
<td>HDMI, the HDMI Logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SiRF Star IV GPS</strong></td>
<td>This product incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SiRF Star IV GPS</strong></td>
<td>This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SIRIUS XM Radio</strong></td>
<td>“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. • Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law. SIRIUS, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its subsidiaries. All rights reserved. Service not available in Alaska and Hawaii.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This product incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.
**Surround**

This unit is equipped with a digital signal processing circuit that lets you play program sources in the surround mode to achieve the same sense of presence as in a movie theater.

**Surround modes and parameters**

This table shows the speakers that can be used in each surround mode and the surround parameters adjustable in each surround mode.

**Symbols in the table.**

- ○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
- ○ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of “Speaker Config.” (page 78).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surround mode (page 44)</th>
<th>Channel output</th>
<th>Surround Parameter (page 73)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front L/R</td>
<td>Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PURE DIRECT (2channel)</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIRECT (2channel)</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIRECT (Multi-channel)</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEREO</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTI CH IN</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II X</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II X</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II A-DSX</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS NEO:6</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS NEO:6 A-DSX</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audyssey DSX</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY TrueHD</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS SURROUND</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTI CH STEREO</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEURAL</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY VIRTUAL SPEAKER</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY HEADPHONE</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* 1 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
* 2 If “Audyssey DSX” (page 75) is set to “ON-Height-”, sound is output from the front height speakers.
* 3 If “Audyssey DSX” (page 75) is set to “ON-Wide-”, sound is output from the front wide speakers.
* 4 Only when “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE+Main” (page 79), sound is output from the subwoofer.
* 5 For HD Audio whose sampling frequency of an input signal is more than 96 kHz, this sound parameter cannot be set.
* 6 This item can be selected when a Dolby TrueHD signal is played.
* 7 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is played.
* 8 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
### Surround

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surround mode (p. 44)</th>
<th>Surround Parameter (p. 73)</th>
<th>NEO 6 Music mode only</th>
<th>Tone (p. 74)</th>
<th>Audyssey Settings (p. 74)</th>
<th>Audyssey DSX™ Soundstage (p. 75)</th>
<th>M-DAX (p. 76)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pure direct (2 chan)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pure direct (multi- chan)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direct (2 chan)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direct (multi- chan)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stereo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi ch in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby pro logic II</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby pro logic III</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby pro logic II</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby pro logic II A-DSX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dts neo 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dts neo 6 A-dsx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audyssey Dsx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audyssey Dsg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby digital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby digital plus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby true HD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dts surround</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dts 96/24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dts-hd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dts express</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi ch stereo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby virtual speaker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolby headphone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*9 This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” (p. 74) is set to “ON”.
*10 For HD Audio whose sampling frequency of an input signal is more than 96 kHz, this sound parameter cannot be set.
*11 This item cannot be set when “MultEQ XT” (p. 74) is set to “OFF” or “Manual”.
*12 This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” (p. 74) is set to “OFF”.
*13 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.
### Types of input signals, and corresponding surround modes

This table shows the input signal that can be played in each surround mode. Check the audio signal of the input source then select the surround mode.

#### Symbols in the table

- This indicates the selectable surround mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surround mode (v page 44)</th>
<th>Input signal types and formats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANALOG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS SURROUND</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD MSTR</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD Hi RES</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS ES DSCHT6.1</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS ES MTRX6.1</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS SURROUND</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS (+HDI) + PLX MOVIE</td>
<td>#2 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS (+HDI) + PLX MUSIC</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS (+HDI) + PLX</td>
<td>#4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS EXPRESS</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS (+HDI) + NEO 6</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS NEO 6 CINEMA</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS NEO 6 MUSIC</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS NEO 6 CINEMA A-DSX</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS NEO 6 MUSIC A-DSX</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolby Surround</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY TrueHD</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL EX</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY (D+) (HD) + EX</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL EX</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL EX MOVIE</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL EX MUSIC</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY DIGITAL EX 4PLX</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC EX MOVIE</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC EX MUSIC</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC EX GAME</td>
<td>#1 #3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC EX</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MOVIE</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MUSIC</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II GAME</td>
<td>#5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 If “Speaker Config.” = “S.Back” (v page 78) is set to “None”, this surround mode cannot be selected.
*2 If “Speaker Config.” = “S.Back” (v page 78) is set to “1spkr” or “None”, this surround mode cannot be selected.
*3 This surround mode can be selected when “Ampl Assign” (v page 78) is set to “Normal”.
*4 If “Speaker Config.” = “F.Height” (v page 78) is set to “None”, this surround mode cannot be selected.
*5 The same was when “Audyssey DSX™” (v page 75) setting is set to “ON”.
## Surround

### Input signal types and formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surround mode (page 44)</th>
<th>PCM</th>
<th>DTS-HD Master Audio</th>
<th>DTS-HD High Resolution Audio</th>
<th>DTS ES</th>
<th>DTS ES Matrix</th>
<th>DTS (6.1ch)</th>
<th>DTS (6ch/4ch)</th>
<th>DOLBY TrueHD</th>
<th>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus</th>
<th>DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With Flag)</th>
<th>DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With no Flag)</th>
<th>DOLBY DIGITAL (5.1/4ch)</th>
<th>DOLBY DIGITAL (4/3ch)</th>
<th>DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DOLBY SURROUND</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MOVIE A-DSX</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MUSIC A-DSX</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY PRO LOGIC II GAME A-DSX</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audyssey DSX</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY VIRTUAL SPEAKER</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOLBY HEADPHONE</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NOTES

1. If "Speaker Config." - "S.Back" (page 78) is set to "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
2. If "Speaker Config." - "S.Back" is set to "1spkr" or "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
3. This surround mode can be selected when "Amp Assign" (page 78) is set to "Normal".
4. If "Speaker Config." - "F.Height" (page 78) is set to "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
5. The same was when "Audyssey DSX™" (page 78) setting is set to "ON".
## Relationship between video signals and monitor output

### MAIN ZONE MONITOR OUT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video Convert</th>
<th>Input Signals</th>
<th>Output Signals</th>
<th>Menu displayed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>COMPONENT</td>
<td>VIDEO</td>
<td>HDMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>○ (1080p)</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>○ (1080i ~ 480p)</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>○ (1080p)</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>○ (1080i ~ 480p)</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○ (1080p)</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○ (1080i ~ 480p)</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ○: Video signal input present
- X: No video signal input
- *1: When no HDMI monitor is connected or the HDMI monitor's power is not on
- *2: Only the menu is displayed
- *3: Only the menu is displayed
- ( ) Superimposed on the picture indicated in ( )
- ( ) Only the picture in ( ) is output.
- X: Neither the picture nor the menu is output.
- X: Menu display cannot be superimposed when x.v.Color signals and computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) are input.
- X: If an HDMI monitor is not connected or power of an HDMI monitor is not turned on, the menu is superimposed on a video image in parenthesis.

### ZONE2 MONITOR OUT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Signals</th>
<th>Output Signals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMPONENT</td>
<td>VIDEO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>○</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The main zone video conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.
• When SECAM signals of video input are up-converted, the signals are output in PAL format from the S-Video and Video connectors.
• The menu display cannot be superimposed when x.v.Color signals and computer’s resolution (e.g. VGA) are input.

### NOTE

- If you operate the menu while playing back 3D video content, the playback video is replaced by the menu screen. The playback video is not displayed behind the menu screen.
- This unit does not show the status display while playing back 3D video content.
Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion™ (A-DSX)

Realistic reproduction of sound relies on the ability of audio systems to match human hearing performance. Three key requirements are: (1) frequency response, (2) dynamic range, and (3) accurate spatial reproduction. The requirements for frequency response have already been surpassed with sampling rates that exceed human hearing. The dynamic range limits of human perception have also been met with current digital audio systems operating capable of signal to noise ratios that approach 120 dB. Accurate spatial sound rendering, however, has not yet reached the limits of perception as human perception relies on the combination of sounds arriving from many more directions than what 5.1-channel surround sound systems provide. Audyssey DSX technology was developed to overcome the spatial sound rendering limitations faced by 5.1-channel surround sound formats.

The ITU 5.1-channel channel standard recommends three front loudspeakers and two rear loudspeakers. The Left (L) and Right (R) front loudspeakers should be placed at ±30° relative to the center listening position. The Center (C) loudspeaker should be at 0° and the surround loudspeakers (SL, SR) should be placed between 100° and 120°. All loudspeakers must be equidistant from the center listening position or compensated with time delay if that is not possible. A separate low-frequency effects (LFE) channel is used to reproduce bass content from the subwoofer. There are certain things that 5.1-channel surround sound systems do well compared to 2-channel stereo. For example, it is possible to move sounds across the front seamlessly. It is also possible to create ambience behind the listener. But 5.1-channel surround systems do not provide enough channels from which to render the required reful ected sound components for a seamless and enveloping soundstage. Unfortunately, the additional two back surround channels in 7.1-channel systems are not in the right place to provide a significant perceptual improvement.

Adding more channels to a surround system is not for special effects. Accurate spatial sound reproduction requires rendering of directional sound cues and non-directional ambient cues. Reflected sound arriving after the direct sound play a critical role in the perception of soundstage width and depth. To have the most impact, additional surround channels should be used to control the direction, time of arrival, and frequency response of the reful ected sound to render an expanded soundstage that reproduces sound with better localization and envelopment than what 5.1-channel systems provide.

Research into the perception of auditory source width has shown that there are strong preferences in the direction of reful ected sound and the perception of soundstage width and spaciousness. The single most important direction of side-wall reful ected sound is ±60°. DSX provides a pair of Wide channels (LW and RW) at ±60° with characteristics that are consistent for response and perceptual processing to match the requirements of human hearing. In fact, the Wide channels are much more critical in the presentation of a realistic soundstage than the back Surround Back. Using multiple Wide channels provides a more enveloping 7.1-channel system is one based on what Wide speakers are used instead of Back Surround speakers. Adding surround channels behind the listener has a very small impact compared to the increase in envelopment and soundstage width that the front wide channels will provide.

After side reful cts, the next most important acoustical and perceptual cues come from reful cts above the front stage. DSX provides a pair of Height channels (LH and RH) at a 45° azimuth angle and elevated to a 45° angle in the median plane. In addition to creating new Wide and Height channels, DSX also provides Surround Processing to enhance the envelopment of the Surround and Back Surround channels (if present). DSX Surround Processing processes the standard surround sound signals in the time and frequency domains to improve the perceived sense of envelopment and blending with the other speakers in the surround system.

Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion is a scalable system that can adapt to the practical needs of the user. The first level of surround stage enhancement comes from adding the Wide channels. The second level comes from adding the Height channels. If it is practical to have both Wide and Heights then the surround performance will be further enhanced. DSX automatically reconfigures its processing to optimize surround rendering over any number of available speakers beyond that of 5.1-channel.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Audyssey Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Audyssey Dynamic EQ works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ XT to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Audyssey Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT

Audyssey MultEQ XT is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that perceived acoustics. Audyssey MultEQ XT works in tandem with Audyssey Dynamic Volume to provide well-balanced sound for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ XT calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround sound system setup.

Auto Lip Sync

This function helps synchronize audio and video. If you connect this unit to a TV that supports the Auto Lip Sync function, it can automatically correct for any delay between the audio and video.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ solves the problem of frequency response, (2) dynamic range, and (3) perceived bass response, tone balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Audyssey Dynamic EQ works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ XT to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Audyssey Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT

Audyssey MultEQ XT is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that perceived acoustics. Audyssey MultEQ XT works in tandem with Audyssey Dynamic Volume to provide well-balanced sound for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ XT calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround sound system setup.

Auto Lip Sync

If you connect this unit to a TV that supports the Auto Lip Sync function, it can automatically correct for any delay between the audio and video.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-distance wireless communication technology used for connecting certain devices to each other without a direct wire. Bluetooth technology is used in many different types of devices, including cell phones, laptops, and stereo equipment. It uses a small black plastic “bluetooth” chip which is installed in a device to allow it to communicate with other devices using a wireless connection. The connection is made through a small “bluetooth” symbol that is usually located on the front or side of the device. The connection is made by simply turning on the “bluetooth” feature on the device and then searching for other devices that are nearby. Once the device finds other devices, it can connect to them and exchange data, such as photos or music files. Bluetooth technology is used in many different types of devices, including cell phones, laptops, and stereo equipment. It uses a small black plastic “bluetooth” chip which is installed in a device to allow it to communicate with other devices using a wireless connection. The connection is made through a small “bluetooth” symbol that is usually located on the front or side of the device. The connection is made by simply turning on the “bluetooth” feature on the device and then searching for other devices that are nearby. Once the device finds other devices, it can connect to them and exchange data, such as photos or music files. Bluetooth technology is used in many different types of devices, including cell phones, laptops, and stereo equipment. It uses a small black plastic “bluetooth” chip which is installed in a device to allow it to communicate with other devices using a wireless connection. The connection is made through a small “bluetooth” symbol that is usually located on the front or side of the device. The connection is made by simply turning on the “bluetooth” feature on the device and then searching for other devices that are nearby. Once the device finds other devices, it can connect to them and exchange data, such as photos or music files. Bluetooth technology is used in many different types of devices, including cell phones, laptops, and stereo equipment. It uses a small black plastic “bluetooth” chip which is installed in a device to allow it to communicate with other devices using a wireless connection. The connection is made through a small “bluetooth” symbol that is usually located on the front or side of the device. The connection is made by simply turning on the “bluetooth” feature on the device and then searching for other devices that are nearby. Once the device finds other devices, it can connect to them and exchange data, such as photos or music files.
Dolby Headphone
The Dolby Headphone technology provides a surround sound listening experience over headphones. When listening to multichannel content such as DVD movies over headphones, the listening experience is fundamentally different than listening to speakers. Since the headphone speaker drivers are covering the pinna of the ear, the listening experience differs greatly from traditional speaker playback. Dolby utilizes patented headphone perspective curves to solve this problem and provides a non-fatiguing, immersive, home theater listening experience. Dolby Headphone also delivers exceptional 3D audio from stereo material.

Dolby TrueHD
Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master. This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96kHz/24bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192kHz/24bit resolution. Dolby TrueHD is adopted for applications that put very high importance on sound quality.

Dolby Pro Logic II
Dolby Pro Logic II is a matrix decoding technology developed by Dolby Laboratories. Regular music such as that on CDs is encoded into 5 channels to achieve an excellent surround effect. The surround channel signals are converted into stereo and full band signals (with a frequency response of 20 Hz to 20 kHz or greater) to create a “three-dimensional” sound image offering a rich sense of presence for all stereo sources.

Dolby Pro Logic IIx
Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a further improved version of the Dolby Pro Logic II matrix decoding technology. Audio signals recorded in 2 channels are decoded to achieve a natural sound with up to 7.1 channels. There are three modes: “Music” suited for playing music, “Movie” suited for playing movies, and “Game” which is optimized for playing games.

Dolby Pro Logic IIZ
Dolby Pro Logic IIZ introduces a new dimension to Home Entertainment through the addition of a pair of front height channels. Compatible with stereo, 5.1-channel and 7.1-channel content, Dolby Pro Logic IIZ provides enhanced spaciousness, depth and dimension to movies, concert video and video game playback while maintaining the full integrity of the source mix. Dolby Pro Logic IZ identifies and decodes spatial cues that occur naturally in all content, directing this information to the front height channels, complementing the performance of left and right surround sound speakers. Content that is encoded with Dolby Pro Logic IZ height channel information can be even more revealing, with perceptually discrete height channel information bringing an exciting new dimension to home entertainment. Dolby Pro Logic IZ, with front height channels is also an ideal alternative for households that cannot support the placement of back surround speakers of a typical 7.1-channel system but may have bookshelf space available to support the addition of height speakers.

Dolby Virtual Speaker
Dolby Virtual Speaker is a technology certified by Dolby Laboratories that creates a virtualized surround sound experience from two speakers using a multichannel Dolby Digital source. Additionally, Dolby Virtual Speaker can simulate the surround sound effect produced by Dolby Pro Logic or Dolby Pro Logic II. Dolby Virtual Speaker retains all the original Multichannel audio information and provides the listener with the sensation of being surrounded by additional speakers.

Downmix
This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to less number of channels and plays back.

DTS
This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. When playing back audio by connecting this system with a device such as DTS amplifier, accurate sound field position and realistic sound effect as if you are in a movie theater can be obtained.

DTS 96/24
DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1 channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

DTS Digital Surround
DTS Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1 channels of digital discrete surround sound.

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1
DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1
DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format inserting a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS Express
DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1 channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

DTS-HD
This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc. This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS-HD Master Audio
DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96kHz/24bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192kHz/24bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS Neural Surround
DTS Neural Surround has been chosen as the surround sound format for XM Satellite Radio’s “XM HD Surround”, TV sports broadcasting, 7.1 games, Music Direct Internet streaming as well as leading FM and HD Radio stations. It delivers the rich envelopment and discrete image detail of surround sound by unmasking the audio details, typically lost by other playback modes. Audiences will experience the deep ambience and subtle details of movies, music and games.

Dynamic range
The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)
FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) is a codec for audio data compression.

HDCP
When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

HDMI
This is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier. Video signal and audio signal can be connected using 1 cable.
LFE
This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass.

MAIN ZONE
The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)
This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the “MPEG-1” video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.

MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4
These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include “MPEG-1 Video”, “MPEG-2 Video”, “MPEG-4 AVC”. Audio standards include “MPEG-1 Audio”, “MPEG-2 Audio”, “MPEG-4 AAC”.

Pairing
Pairing is an operation required for settings to connect two Bluetooth devices. Pairing enables Bluetooth devices to access each other.

Progressive (sequential scanning)
This is a scanning system of video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and bleeding.

Protection Circuit
This is a function to prevent damage to components within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or temperature for any reason.

In this unit, the power indicator blinks and the unit enters standby mode when an abnormality occurs.

Sampling frequency
Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal). The number of readings taken in one second is called the “sampling frequency”. The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

Speaker impedance
This is an AC resistance value, indicated in Ω (ohms). Greater power can be obtained with this value smaller.

sYCC601 color
Like x.v.Color, each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

vTuner
This is a free online content server for Internet radio. Note that usage fees are included in upgrade costs.
For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.
vTuner website: http://www.radiomarantz.com
This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

WAV (Wave)
WAV is a standard audio format of Windows. The file size tends to increase, but sound near the original sound can be maintained.

Windows Media DRM
This is a copyright protection technology developed by Microsoft.
Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device (WM-DRM) to protect the integrity of their content (Secure Content) so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content (WM-DRM Software). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content (Secure Content Owners) may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software’s right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software’s ability to play unprotected content.

A list of revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content (Secure Content Owners) may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software in this device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content (Secure Content) so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content (WM-DRM Software). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content (Secure Content Owners) may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software’s right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software’s ability to play unprotected content.

x.v.Color
This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors. “x.v.Color” is a Sony registered trademark.

ZONE2
This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE2 playback). The room for ZONE2 playback is called ZONE2.

ZONE3
This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE3 playback). The room for ZONE3 playback is called ZONE3.
# Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. Are the connections correct?
2. Is the set being operated as described in the user guide?
3. Are the other components operating properly?

If this unit does not operate properly, check the items listed in the table below. Should the problem persist, there may be a malfunction. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact your store of purchase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[General] Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power does not turn on.</td>
<td>• Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display is off.</td>
<td>• Set “Display” on the menu to something other than “OFF”.</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set does not operate properly.</td>
<td>• Reset the microprocessor.</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[Video] Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No picture appears.</td>
<td>• Check the TV connection. • Set the TV input correctly.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from surround back speaker.</td>
<td>• Set “Amp Assign” on the menu to “Normal”. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “S.Back” on the menu to something other than “None”. • Set the surround mode to something other than “STEREO”.</td>
<td>78, 78, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from front height speaker.</td>
<td>• Set “Amp Assign” on the menu to “Normal”. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “F.Height” on the menu to something other than “None”.</td>
<td>78, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from front wide speaker.</td>
<td>• Set “Amp Assign” on the menu to “Normal”. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “F.Wide” on the menu to something other than “None”.</td>
<td>78, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from subwoofer.</td>
<td>• Check the subwoofer connections. • Turn on the subwoofer’s power. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “Subwoofer” on the menu to “Yes”. • If “Front” and “Center” for “Speaker Config.” are set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE”, no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected surround mode.</td>
<td>6, 49 – 51, 78, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS sound is not output.</td>
<td>• Set “Decode Mode” on the menu to “Auto” or “DTS”.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.</td>
<td>• Make HDMI connections.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[Audio] Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio is not output.</td>
<td>• Check the connections for all devices. • Check the speaker connections. • Check whether the audio device power is turned on. • Adjust the master volume. • Cancel the mute mode. • Select a suitable input source. • Select a suitable input mode. • Disconnect the headphones. No sound is output from the speakers or the PRE OUT connectors when headphones are connected.</td>
<td>7, 16 – 24, 26, 62, 26, 62, 71, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from surround speaker.</td>
<td>• Check if the surround speakers are connected to the SURROUND terminals.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from surround back speaker.</td>
<td>• Set “Amp Assign” on the menu to “Normal”.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from front height speaker.</td>
<td>• Set “Amp Assign” on the menu to “Normal”.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from front wide speaker.</td>
<td>• Set “Amp Assign” on the menu to “Normal”.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sound is produced from subwoofer.</td>
<td>• Check the subwoofer connections. • Turn on the subwoofer’s power. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “Subwoofer” on the menu to “Yes”. • If “Front” and “Center” for “Speaker Config.” are set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE”, no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected surround mode.</td>
<td>6, 49 – 51, 78, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS sound is not output.</td>
<td>• Set “Decode Mode” on the menu to “Auto” or “DTS”.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.</td>
<td>• Make HDMI connections.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### [HDMI]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No audio is output with HDMI connection.</td>
<td>• Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set “HDMI Audio Out” on the menu to “AMP”.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When outputting HDMI audio from a TV, set “HDMI Audio Out” on the menu to “TV”.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No video is output with HDMI connection.</td>
<td>• Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the input source to match the connected HDMI connector.</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the following operations are performed on devices compatible with HDMI control, the same operations occur on this unit.</td>
<td>• Power ON/OFF</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Switching audio output devices</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Adjust volume</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Switch input source</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [SIRIUS Satellite Radio]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“CHECK SIRIUS TUNER” is displayed.</td>
<td>• The SiriusConnect Home Tuner unit is not connected. Check that the connections are correct.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“ANTENNA ERROR” is displayed.</td>
<td>• The antenna is not connected. Check that the connections are correct.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“NO SIGNAL” is displayed.</td>
<td>• The antenna is not connected. Check that the connections are correct.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“INVALID CHANNEL” is displayed.</td>
<td>• Channel is not present. Select another channel.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“ACQUIRING SIGNAL” is displayed.</td>
<td>• The signal cannot be received. Reposition your SiriusConnect Home Tuner and Home Dock antenna.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Displays while SiriusConnect Home Tuner is connected. Reposition your SiriusConnect Home Tuner and Home Dock antenna.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Call SIRIUS” is displayed.</td>
<td>• Channels are not subscribed to. If you subscribe to the channel, you can receive the channel.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“SUBSCRIPTION UPDATED” is displayed.</td>
<td>• While updating contract information.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Enter Lock Code” is displayed.</td>
<td>• Selected channels are locked. Please insert pass word (4 digits) into “[   ]”.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* After scroll displays “Call 888-539-...” twice, displays “Call SIRIUS”.

### [HD Radio receiver]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reception fails,</td>
<td>• Change the antenna orientation or position.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there is a lot of noise or distortion.</td>
<td>• Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use an FM outdoor antenna.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Separate the antenna from other connection cables.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [M-XPort]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio is not output when a wireless receiver (RX101) is connected.</td>
<td>• Check that the Bluetooth device and Wireless receiver (RX101) are correctly paired.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [Internet radio / Media server / iPod / USB memory device / Flickr / Napster / Pandora / Rhapsody]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.</td>
<td>• USB memory device is in format other than FAT16 or FAT32. Set the format to FAT16 or FAT32. For details, refer to the USB memory device's operating instructions.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions. If divided into multiple partitions, only files stored in the top partition can be played.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• USB memory device is in format other than FAT16 or FAT32. Record the files in a compatible format.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• USB memory device is connected via USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The file names cannot be played.  

* Characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a “.”.

Internet radio cannot be played.  

* Ethernet cable is not properly connected or network is disconnected. Check the connection status.
* Program is being broadcast in non-compatible format. Only Internet radio programs in MP3 and WMA can be played on this set.
* The computer’s or router’s firewall is activated. Check the computer’s or router’s firewall settings.
* Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Choose a radio station that is currently broadcasting.
* IP address is wrong. Check the set’s IP address.
## Symptoms and Solutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Files stored on a computer cannot be played. | • Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format.  
• You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this set.  
• Set and computer are connected by USB cable. The set’s USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer. | 34 |
| Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server. | • The computer’s or router’s firewall is activated. Check the computer’s or router’s firewall settings.  
• Computer’s power is not turned on. Turn on the power.  
• Server is not running. Launch the server.  
• Set’s IP address is wrong. Check the set’s IP address.  
• Connecting to the media server may take a few minutes the first time you attempt to make a connection. | – |
| iPod cannot be played. | • Some iPods do not support being used connected directly to the USB port. | 20 |
| When an iPod is connected, “No Connection” is displayed. | • “No Connection” may display if you connect an iPod that has only a small amount of charge remaining in its battery to this unit. Should this occur, charge the iPod before connecting it to this unit. | – |
| Cannot connect to preset or favorite radio stations. | • Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again.  
• Radio station is not currently in service. It is not possible to connect to radio stations that are no longer in service. | – |
| For some radio stations, “Server Full” or “Connection Down” is displayed and station cannot be connected to. | • Station is congested or not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again. | – |
| Sound is broken during playback. | • Network’s signal transfer speed is slow or communications lines or radio station is congested. This is not a malfunction. When playing broadcast data with a high bit rate, the sound may be broken, depending on the communications conditions. | – |
| Sound quality is poor or played sound is noisy. | • File being played has a low bit rate. This is not a malfunction. | – |
| Cannot login to Rhapsody. (“Incorrect Username or Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the Username for Rhapsody has been properly entered. Re-enter the Password. (Password is not displayed.)  
www.rhapsody.com/choose/index_default.html | 83 |
| Cannot delete Rhapsody Channel registered in “My Channels” | • Cannot be done with this unit. Delete from PC Application. | – |
| Cannot delete Tracks, Playlists, Channels registered in “My Library” | • Cannot be done with this unit. Delete from PC Application. | – |
| Cannot login to Napster. (“Incorrect Username or Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the Username for Napster has been properly entered. Re-enter the Password. (Password is not displayed.)  
http://www.napster.com/choose/index_default.html | 83 |
| Cannot login to Pandora. (“Email address” or “Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the “Email address” for Pandora has been properly entered. Re-enter the “Password”. (Password is not displayed.)  
http://www.pandora.com/marantz | 40 |
| Cannot compile Playlist. | • This unit does not respond to playlist compilation. When the playlist is compiled in PC Application, it is registered to “My Library”. In this way, the playlist can be played in this unit. | – |

## Remote Control Unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Cause/Solution</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The set cannot be operated with the remote control unit. | • Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries.  
• Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°.  
• Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.  
• Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the  and  marks.  
• The set’s remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light. | 102 |
| Cannot login to Rhapsody. (“Incorrect Username or Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the Username for Rhapsody has been properly entered. Re-enter the Password. (Password is not displayed.)  
www.rhapsody.com/choose/index_default.html | 83 |
| Cannot compile Playlist. | • This unit does not respond to playlist compilation. When the playlist is compiled in PC Application, it is registered to “My Library”. In this way, the playlist can be played in this unit. | – |
Resetting the microprocessor

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed. When the microprocessor is reset, all the settings are reset to their default values.
Various setting details can be saved and reset on this device. If setting details are saved before returning to the default values, after returning to the default settings, setting details can be returned to the same values as before returning to the defaults.

1. When the power is ON, press and hold SLEEP and ENTER for more than 3 seconds. After “MEMORY SAVING” is shown on the display, “COMPLETE” is shown to inform you that the settings have been saved.

2. Turn off the power using ON/STANDBY.

3. Press ON/STANDBY while simultaneously pressing SURROUND MODE and AUTO.

4. Once the display starts flashing at intervals of about 1 second, release the two buttons.

5. Press and hold SLEEP and MENU for more than 3 seconds. After “MEMORY LOAD” is shown on the display, “COMPLETE” is shown to inform you that the settings have returned to those saved in step 1.

• To return all of the settings to the default values, perform steps 2 to 4 without performing step 1.
• If in step 3 the display does not flash at intervals of about 1 second, start over from step 1.
Specifications

Audio section
- Analog
  Input sensitivity/Input impedance: 200 mV/47 kΩ
  Frequency response: 10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (DIRECT mode)
  S/N: 105 dB (IHF–A weighted, DIRECT mode)
  Distortion: 0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (DIRECT mode)
  Rated output: Unbalanced pre-output: 1.2 V
                 Balanced pre-output: 2.4 V
- Digital
  D/A output: Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback)
              Dynamic range — 100 dB
  Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB)
  S/N ratio — 102 dB
  Digital input: Format — Digital audio interface

Phono equalizer (PHONO input — REC OUT)
- Input sensitivity: 2.5 mV
- RIAA deviation: ±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
- S/N: 74 dB (A weighting, with 5 mV input)
- Rated output: 150 mV
- Distortion factor: 0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)

Video section
- Standard video connectors
  Input/output level and impedance: 1 Vpp, 75 Ω
  Frequency response: 5 Hz – 10 MHz — +1, –3 dB
- Color component video connector
  Input/output level and impedance: Y (brightness) signal — 1 Vpp, 75 Ω
                                      Pr / Cs signal — 0.7 Vpp, 75 Ω
                                      Pb / Cs signal — 0.7 Vpp, 75 Ω
  Frequency response: 5 Hz – 60 MHz — +0, –3 dB (when “Video Convert” set to “OFF”)

Tuner section
- FM
  Receiving Range: 87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz
  Usable Sensitivity: 1.5 μV (14.8 dBf)
  S/N (IHF–A): MONO 78 dB
                STEREO 68 dB
  Total harmonic Distortion (at 1 kHz):
                MONO 0.1 %
                STEREO 0.2 %
                HD 0.02 %
- AM
  Receiving Range: 530 kHz – 1710 kHz
  Usable Sensitivity: 18 μV
  S/N (IHF–A): 78 dB
  Total harmonic Distortion (at 1 kHz):
                MONO 0.2 %
                STEREO 0.2 %
                HD 0.02 %

General
- Power supply: AC 120 V, 60 Hz
- Power consumption: 60 W
- 0.2 W (Standby)
- 4.0 W (CEC standby)
- Maximum external dimensions: 440 (W) x 187 (H) x 395 (D) mm
- Weight: 10.1 kg

Remote control unit (RC011SR)
- Batteries: R03/AAA Type (two batteries)

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.
Index

Numerics

2.1-channel .................................................. 51
3D .................................................................. 15
5.1-channel .................................................... 49, 50
7.1-channel .................................................... 48, 49

A

A2DP ................................................................. 23, 109
Accessories ......................................................... 2
Add New Feature ............................................... 86
Adjust CH .......................................................... 76
Adjusting the master volume .......................... 26
Adobe RGB color / Adobe YCC601 color ............ 109
A-DSX Soundstage ........................................... 75
AM loop antenna ............................................. 22
Amp Assign ...................................................... 78
Antenna Aiming ............................................... 68
ARC .................................................................. 15
Aspect ................................................................ 70
Audio Adjust ..................................................... 73
Audio cable ...................................................... 6, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23
Audio Delay ..................................................... 76
Audio Setup ...................................................... 81
Audio/Video Adjust .......................................... 72
Audyssey Auto Setup ....................................... 8, 52
Audyssey DSX ................................................... 75
Audyssey Dynamic EQ ..................................... 74, 109
Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion™ (A-DSX) .................................................. 109
Audyssey Dynamic Volume ................................ 75, 109
Audyssey MultEQ XT ......................................... 74, 99, 109
Audyssey Settings ............................................. 74
Auto Lip Sync ................................................... 80, 109
Auto Preset ....................................................... 67
Auto Setup ....................................................... 8, 52

B

Base Curve Copy ................................................. 76
Bass .................................................................. 73, 83
Bass Setting ...................................................... 79
Bi-amp ............................................................... 51
Bluetooth .......................................................... 23, 109
Brightness .......................................................... 77

C

Cable

Audio cable ...................................................... 6, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23
Coaxial digital cable ....................................... 18
Component video cable .................................... 17, 18, 19
Ethernet cable .................................................. 24
HDMI cable ..................................................... 7, 16
Optical cable .................................................... 17, 19, 20, 21
Speaker cable .................................................. 6
Video cable ........................................................ 17, 18, 19
Channel ........................................................... 83
Channel Level ................................................ 56, 79
Characters ....................................................... 65
Chroma Level ................................................... 77
C. Image ............................................................ 73
Coaxial digital cable ....................................... 18
Component 2 Output ........................................ 85
Component video cable .................................... 17, 18, 19
Condensation ...................................................... 3
Connection

7.1CH INPUT terminal ....................................... 23
Antenna ............................................................. 22
Blu-ray Disc player .......................................... 7, 16, 17
Cable TV ............................................................ 18
CD player ........................................................... 20
CD recorder ..................................................... 21
DC OUT (TRIGGER OUT) jacks ......................... 54
Digital camcorder ........................................... 16, 19
DVD player ..................................................... 16, 18
Game console .................................................. 16
HDMI ............................................................... 15
HD Radio receiver ........................................... 22
Home network (LAN) ....................................... 24
iPod USB .......................................................... 20
Power cord ....................................................... 7
Record player ................................................... 21
Remote control jacks ....................................... 53
RS-232C connector .......................................... 54
Satellite ............................................................. 11
Set-top box ..................................................... 16, 18
SIRIUS ............................................................. 22
Speaker ............................................................. 5, 49
TV .................................................................. 7, 16, 17
USB memory device ....................................... 20
Video cassette recorder .................................... 16, 19
Wireless receiver (RX101) ............................... 23
Contrast ............................................................ 77
Crossover Frequency ....................................... 80
C. Width ............................................................ 73

D

D.Comp ............................................................. 73
Decode Mode ................................................... 71
Deep Color ....................................................... 15, 109
Dimension .......................................................... 18
Direct mode ..................................................... 27

Display ........................................................... 86, 99
Distance ........................................................... 79
DLNA ............................................................... 109
DNR ................................................................. 77
Dolby

Dolby Digital .................................................. 45, 109
Dolby Digital EX ............................................. 45, 109
Dolby Digital Plus .......................................... 45, 109
Dolby Headphone .......................................... 46, 110
Dolby Pro Logic II .......................................... 46, 110
Dolby Pro Logic Ix .......................................... 46, 110
Dolby TrueHD ................................................ 48, 110
Dolby Virtual Speaker ..................................... 48, 110
Downmix .......................................................... 110

DRC ............................................................... 73
DTS ................................................................. 45, 110
DTS 96/24 ....................................................... 45, 110
DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 ....................................... 45, 110
DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 ......................................... 45, 110
DTS-HD ............................................................ 45, 110
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio ....................... 45, 110
DTS-HD Master Audio .................................... 45, 110
DTS Digital Surround ....................................... 45, 110
DTS Express ................................................... 46, 110
DTS NEO:6™ Surround ..................................... 44, 110
DTS Neural Surround ....................................... 45, 110
Dynamic EQ ..................................................... 74
Dynamic range .................................................. 76
Dynamic Volume .............................................. 75

E

Enhancer ........................................................... 77
EQ Customize .................................................. 81
Error messages (Auto Setup) ......................... 24
Ethernet cable .................................................. 88

F

Fader function .................................................. 56
F.Height ........................................................... 78
Firmware Update ............................................. 86
FLAC ............................................................... 110
Flickr ................................................................. 33, 38
FM indoor antenna .......................................... 22
Front A/B (connection) ..................................... 49, 51
Front height speaker ....................................... 48, 49
Front Panel ....................................................... 98
Front wide speaker ......................................... 48, 49
F.Wide ............................................................. 79
GUI ................................................................. 84

G

GUI ................................................................. 84

M

Macro function ............................................... 95
Maintenance Mode .......................................... 86
MAIN ZONE .................................................... 111
Manual EQ ..................................................... 76
Manual Setup .................................................. 77
Master volume display ................................... 85
M-DAX ............................................................ 76
Menu map ........................................................ 63
Monitor Out .................................................... 80
MP3 ................................................................. 111
MPEG ............................................................. 111
MPEG-4 AAC .................................................. 111
MultEQ XT .................................................... 74
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mute Level</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-XPort</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Napster</td>
<td>35, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Setup</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Napster Account</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Connecting</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Information</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhapsody</td>
<td>35, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>O</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical cable</td>
<td>17, 19, 20, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option Setup</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add New Feature</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component 2 Output</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware Update</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUI</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Mode</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Lock</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Delete</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Out</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Control</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zone Rename</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pairing</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandora</td>
<td>35, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel lock function</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panorama</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Check</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parental Lock</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture Adjust</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blu-ray Disc player</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD player</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD player</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flickr</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD Radio reception</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet radio</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod/USB</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media server</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>28, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPEG-4 AAC</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-channel</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Napster</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network audio</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandora</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure direct</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhapsody</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIRIUS</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereo</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB memory device</td>
<td>28, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WMA</td>
<td>28, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE2</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE3</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback Mode</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Off Control</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power On Level</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preset codes</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preset Name</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preset Skip</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presetting radio stations</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive Mode</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection circuit</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear panel</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Level Offset</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control settings</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control unit</td>
<td>90, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the batteries</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating AV equipment</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating components</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registering Preset Codes</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote mode</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reseting the microprocessor</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB Range</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhapsody</td>
<td>35, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling frequency</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.Back</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screensaver</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the input source</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Lock</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIRIUS</td>
<td>22, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep timer</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Delete</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Level</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>5, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install</td>
<td>5, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set up</td>
<td>8, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker cable</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Config</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker impedance</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Setup</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage Height</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage Width</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby Source</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Still Picture</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subwoofer setting</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround back speaker</td>
<td>5, 48, 49, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround Mode</td>
<td>44, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround Parameter</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the light illumination</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the front speakers</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sYCC601 color</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone Control</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trademark</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treble</td>
<td>73, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Out</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning off the sound temporarily</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn off power (standby)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn on power</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video cable</td>
<td>17, 18, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video conversion</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Convert</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Mode</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Select</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Control</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Level</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Limit</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vTuner</td>
<td>83, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>W</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAV</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAP</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Media DRM</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Media Player Ver.11</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless LAN-compatible mobile terminal</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WMA</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>X</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x.v.Color</td>
<td>15, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Z</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE2</td>
<td>61, 99, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE3</td>
<td>61, 99, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device select: BD</td>
<td>List of preset codes / Liste de codes préréglés / Lista de códigos pre-ajustados</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blu-ray Disc Player</strong></td>
<td><strong>Marantz 5000, 5026, 5027</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Onkyo 5013</strong></td>
<td><strong>Onkyo 5013</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hitachi 5001, 5002, 5003</strong></td>
<td><strong>Hitachi 5001, 5002, 5003</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitsubishi 5004, 5005</strong></td>
<td><strong>Mitsubishi 5004, 5005</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pioneer 5006</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pioneer 5006</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Samsung 5007</strong></td>
<td><strong>Samsung 5007</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sharp 5008, 5009, 5010</strong></td>
<td><strong>Sharp 5008, 5009, 5010</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Toshiba 5012</strong></td>
<td><strong>Toshiba 5012</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yamaha 5015, 5022, 5023</strong></td>
<td><strong>Yamaha 5015, 5022, 5023</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device select: SAT</strong></td>
<td><strong>Device select: TV</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Satellite Receiver</strong></td>
<td><strong>Television</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AlphaStar 4027</strong></td>
<td><strong>Acer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amstrad 4046, 4047, 4050</strong></td>
<td><strong>Acer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arndy 4048</strong></td>
<td><strong>Akcik</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DishNetwork 4030</strong></td>
<td><strong>Akai</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drake 4026</strong></td>
<td><strong>Altron</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Echostar 4030, 4032, 4034, 4036, 4038, 4040</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amstron</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExpressVu 4017</strong></td>
<td><strong>Anam</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Freesat 4056</strong></td>
<td><strong>Anam National</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fujitsu 4025</strong></td>
<td><strong>AOC</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GE 4002, 4008, 4009</strong></td>
<td><strong>Audiovox</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Instruments 4016, 4017</strong></td>
<td><strong>Bell &amp; Howell</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hitachi 4015, 4016, 4017</strong></td>
<td><strong>Benq</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hughes 4010, 4016</strong></td>
<td><strong>Brokonic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Humax 4045, 4050, 4052, 4054</strong></td>
<td><strong>Citizen</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Janniel 4025</strong></td>
<td><strong>Colorscope</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>JVC 4017</strong></td>
<td><strong>Colorscope</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitsubishi</strong></td>
<td><strong>Comet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nokia</strong></td>
<td><strong>Contec</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>O2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Contec/Conex</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Panasonic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Craig</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Philips</strong></td>
<td><strong>Daimond</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proscan</strong></td>
<td><strong>Daewoo</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radio Shack</strong></td>
<td><strong>Daimond</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Realistic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Realistic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RCA</strong></td>
<td><strong>Runco</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESET CODE**

1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device select: CD</th>
<th>Device select: CD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD Player</td>
<td>CD Player</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIWA</td>
<td>AIWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AKAI</td>
<td>AKAI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO</td>
<td>AUDIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong></td>
<td><strong>B</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALIFORNIA</td>
<td>CALIFORNIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARVER</td>
<td>CARVER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASIO</td>
<td>CASIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURTIS</td>
<td>CURTIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D</strong></td>
<td><strong>D</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DENON</td>
<td>DENON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E</strong></td>
<td><strong>E</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMERSON</td>
<td>EMERSON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F</strong></td>
<td><strong>F</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FISHER</td>
<td>FISHER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G</strong></td>
<td><strong>G</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>GE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENEXXA</td>
<td>GENEXXA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H</strong></td>
<td><strong>H</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARMON</td>
<td>HARMON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HITACHI</td>
<td>HITACHI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVC</td>
<td>JVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>J</strong></td>
<td><strong>J</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JC PENNEY</td>
<td>JC PENNEY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVC</td>
<td>JVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>K</strong></td>
<td><strong>K</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KARDON</td>
<td>KARDON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KENNEL</td>
<td>KENNEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L</strong></td>
<td><strong>L</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUXMAN</td>
<td>LUXMAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXI</td>
<td>LXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong></td>
<td><strong>M</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGNAVOX</td>
<td>MAGNAVOX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MABANTZ</td>
<td>MABANTZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATHEWS</td>
<td>MATHEWS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCE</td>
<td>MCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGSA</td>
<td>MGSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISSION</td>
<td>MISSION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MITSUBISHI</td>
<td>MITSUBISHI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong></td>
<td><strong>N</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD</td>
<td>NAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAKAMICHI</td>
<td>NAKAMICHI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSC/ACS</td>
<td>NSC/ACS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIKKO</td>
<td>NIKKO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>O</strong></td>
<td><strong>O</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONKYO</td>
<td>ONKYO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTIMUS</td>
<td>OPTIMUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Q</strong></td>
<td><strong>Q</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PANASONIC</td>
<td>PANASONIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHILIPS</td>
<td>PHILIPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIONEER</td>
<td>PIONEER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REALISTIC</td>
<td>REALISTIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS ORIGINAL</td>
<td>RS ORIGINAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong></td>
<td><strong>T</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SONY</td>
<td>SONY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYVANIA</td>
<td>SYVANIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMPHONIC</td>
<td>SYMPHONIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>U</strong></td>
<td><strong>U</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECHNICA</td>
<td>TECHNICA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V</strong></td>
<td><strong>V</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VICTOR</td>
<td>VICTOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YAMAHA</td>
<td>YAMAHA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Z</strong></td>
<td><strong>Z</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZENITH</td>
<td>ZENITH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESET CODE**
Dimensions / Dimensions / Dimensions

Unit: mm (in)

<Diagram of dimensions with measurements labeled>

440.0 (17.3/4)
17/32 (1.375)
17/32 (1.375)
16.5 (11/16)
16.5 (11/16)
23.5 (15/16)
11.5 (1/2)
170.5 (6 3/8)
368.0 (14 9/16)
38.0 (1 1/2)
11.5 (1/2)
11.5 (1/2)